Functional Analysis Tools with Examples

February 4, 2020  File:241Functional’2020s.tex
Part I

Background
Vector Valued Integration Theory

[The reader interested in integrals of Hilbert valued functions, may go directly to Section 1.3 below and bypass the Bochner integral altogether.]

Let $X$ be a Banach space and $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mu)$ be a measure space. Given a “nice enough” function, $f : \Omega \to X$, we would like to define $\int_\Omega f \, d\mu$ as an element in $X$. Whatever integration theory we develop we minimally want to require that

$$
\varphi \left( \int_\Omega f \, d\mu \right) = \int_\Omega \varphi \circ f \, d\mu \quad \text{for all } \varphi \in X^*.
$$

(1.1)

Basically, the Pettis Integral developed below makes definitions so that there is an element $\int_\Omega f \, d\mu \in X$ such that Eq. (1.1) holds. There are some subtleties to this theory in its full generality which we will avoid for the most part. For many more details see [21][24] and especially [74]. Other references are Pettis Integral (See Craig Evans PDE book?) also see

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pettis_integral

and

http://www.math.umn.edu/~garrett/m/fun/Notes/07_vv_integrals.pdf

1.1 Pettis Integral

**Remark 1.1 (Wikipedia quote).** In mathematics, the Pettis integral or Gelfand–Pettis integral, named after I. M. Gelfand and B.J. Pettis, extends the definition of the Lebesgue integral to functions on a measure space which take values in a Banach space, by the use of duality. The integral was introduced by Gelfand for the case when the measure space is an interval with Lebesgue measure. The integral is also called the weak integral in contrast to the Bochner integral, which is the strong integral.

We start by describing a weak form of measurability and integrability

**Definition 1.2.** Let $X$ be a Banach space and $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mu)$ be a measure space. We say a function $u : \Omega \to X$ is weakly measurable if $f \circ u : \Omega \to \mathbb{C}$ is measurable for all $f \in X^*$.

**Definition 1.3.** A weakly measurable function $u : \Omega \to X$ is said to be weakly $L^1$ if there exists $U \subseteq L^1(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mu)$ such that $\|u(\omega)\| \leq U(\omega)$ for $\mu$-a.e. $\omega \in \Omega$. We denote the weakly $L^1$ functions by $L^1(\mu : X)$ and for $u \in L^1(\mu : X)$ we define,

$$
\|u\|_1 := \inf \left\{ \int_\Omega U(\omega) \, d\mu(\omega) : U \ni \|u(\cdot)\| \leq U(\cdot) \text{ a.e.} \right\}.
$$

(1.2)

**Remark 1.4.** It is easy to check that $L^1(\mu : X)$ is a vector space and that $\|\cdot\|_1$ satisfies

$$
\|zu\|_1 = |z|\|u\|_1 \quad \text{and} \quad \|u + v\|_1 \leq \|u\|_1 + \|v\|_1
$$

for all $z \in \mathbb{F}$ and $u, v \in L^1(\mu : X)$. As usual $\|u\|_1 = 0$ iff $u(\omega) = 0$ except for $\omega$ in a $\mu$-null set. Indeed, if $\|u\|_1 = 0$, there exists $U_n$ such that $\|u(\cdot)\| \leq U_n(\cdot)$ a.e. and $\int_\Omega U_n \, d\mu \downarrow 0$ as $n \to \infty$. Let $E$ be the null set, $E = \cup_n E_n$, where $E_n$ is a null set such that $\|u(\omega)\| \leq U_n(\omega)$ for $\omega \notin E$. Now by replacing $U_n$ by $\min_{k \leq n} U_n$ if necessary we may assume that $U_n$ is a decreasing sequence such that $\|u\| \leq \lim_{n \to \infty} U_n$ off of $E$ and by DCT $\int_\Omega U \, d\mu = 0$. This shows $\{U \neq 0\}$ is a null set and therefore $\|u(\omega)\| = 0$ if $\omega$ is not in the null set, $E \cup \{U \neq 0\}$.

To each $u \in L^1(\mu : X)$ let

$$
\tilde{u}(\varphi) := \int_\Omega \varphi \circ u \, d\mu \quad (1.2)
$$

which is well defined since $\varphi \circ u$ is measurable and $|\varphi \circ u| \leq \|\varphi\|_{X^*} \cdot \|u(\cdot)\| \leq \|\varphi\|_{X^*} \cdot U(\cdot)$ a.e. Moreover it follows that

$$
|\tilde{u}(\varphi)| \leq \|\varphi\|_{X^*} \cdot \int_\Omega U \, d\mu \implies |\tilde{u}(\varphi)| \leq \|\varphi\|_{X^*} \cdot \|u\|_1
$$

which shows $\tilde{u} \in X^{**}$ and

$$
\|\tilde{u}\|_{X^{**}} \leq \|u\|_1. \quad (1.3)
$$
is linear, and Moreover, if \( x \in X \) is reflexive then \( L^1(\mu : X) = L^1_{Pett}(\mu : X) \).

**Proof.** These assertions are straightforward and will be left to the reader with the exception of Eq. (1.5). To verify Eq. (1.5) we recall that the map \( X \ni x \to \hat{x} \in X^{**} \) (where \( \hat{x}(\varphi) := \varphi(x) \)) is an isometry and the Pettis integral, \( x_u \), is defined so that \( \hat{x}_u = \hat{u} \). Therefore,

\[
\left\| \int_{\Omega} u d\mu \right\|_X = \| x_u \|_X = \| \hat{x}_u \|_{X^{**}} = \| \hat{u} \|_{X^{**}} \leq \| u \|_1 .
\]

wherein we have used Eq. (1.3) for the last inequality.

**Exercise 1.1.** Suppose \((\Omega, F, \mu)\) is a measure space, \( X \) and \( Y \) are Banach spaces, and \( T \in B(X,Y) \). If \( u \in L^1_{Pett}(\mu; X) \) then \( T \circ u \in L^1_{Pett}(\mu; Y) \) and

\[
\int_{\Omega} T \circ u d\mu = T \int_{\Omega} u d\mu.
\]

When \( X \) is a separable metric space (or more generally when \( u \) takes values in a separable subspace of \( X \)), the Pettis integral (now called the Bochner integral) is a fair bit better behaved, see Theorem 1.13 below. As a warm up let us consider Riemann integrals of continuous integrands which is typically all we will need in these notes.

### 1.2 Riemann Integrals of Continuous Integrands

In this section, suppose that \(-\infty < a < b < \infty\) and \( f \in C([a,b], X) \) and for \( \delta > 0 \) let

\[
\operatorname{osc}_f(x) := \max \| f(c) - f(c') \| : c, c' \in [a,b] \text{ with } |c - c'| \leq \delta .
\]

By uniform continuity, we know that \( \operatorname{osc}_f(x) \to 0 \) as \( \delta \downarrow 0 \). It is easy to check that \( f \in L^1(m : X) \) where \( m \) is Lebesgue measure on \([a,b]\) and moreover in this case \( t \to \| f(t) \|_X \) is continuous and hence measurable.

**Theorem 1.7.** If \( f \in C([a,b], X) \), then \( f \in L^1_{Pet}(m; X) \). Moreover if

\[
\Pi = \{ a = t_0 < t_1 < \cdots < t_n = b \} \subset [a,b],
\]

\( \{ c_i \}_{i=1}^n \) are arbitrarily chosen so that \( t_{i-1} \leq c_i \leq t_i \) for all \( i \), and \( |\Pi| := \max_i |t_i - t_{i-1}| \) denotes the mesh size of let \( \Pi \), then

\[
\left\| \int_a^b f(t) \, dt - \sum_{i=1}^n f(c_i) (t_i - t_{i-1}) \right\|_X \leq (b-a) \operatorname{osc}_{|\Pi|}(f) .
\]

**Proof.** Using the notation in the statement of the theorem, let

\[
S_{\Pi}(f) := \sum_{i=1}^n f(c_i) (t_i - t_{i-1}) .
\]

If \( t_{i-1} = s_0 < s_1 < \cdots < s_k = t_i \) and \( s_{j-1} \leq c'_j \leq s_j \) for \( 1 \leq j \leq k \), then

\[
\left\| f(c_i) (t_i - t_{i-1}) - \sum_{j=1}^k f(c'_j) (s_j - s_{j-1}) \right\|_X = \sum_{j=1}^k \left\| f(c_i) - f(c'_j) \right\| (s_j - s_{j-1}) \leq \operatorname{osc}_{|\Pi|}(f) \sum_{j=1}^k (s_j - s_{j-1}) = \operatorname{osc}_{|\Pi|}(f) (t_i - t_{i-1}) .
\]

So if \( \Pi' \) refines \( \Pi \), then by the above argument applied to each pair, \( t_{i-1}, t_i \), it follows that
\[ \| S_{\Pi} (f) - S_{\Pi'} (f) \| \leq \sum_{i=1}^{n} \text{osc}_{\Pi_i} (f) (t_i - t_{i-1}) = \text{osc}_{\Pi_i} (f) \cdot (b - a). \]  

(1.9)

Now suppose that \( \{ \Pi_n \}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) is a sequence of increasing partitions (i.e. \( \Pi_n \subset \Pi_{n+1} \) \( \forall n \in \mathbb{N} \)) with \( |\Pi_n| \to 0 \) as \( n \to \infty \). Then by the previously displayed equation it follows that

\[ \| S_{\Pi_n} (f) - S_{\Pi_m} (f) \| \leq \text{osc}_{\Pi_{m,n}} (f) \cdot (b - a). \]

As the latter expression goes to zero as \( m, n \to \infty \), it follows that \( \lim_{n \to \infty} S_{\Pi_n} (f) \) exists and in particular,

\[ \varphi \left( \lim_{n \to \infty} S_{\Pi_n} (f) \right) = \lim_{n \to \infty} S_{\Pi_n} (\varphi \circ f) = \int_a^b \varphi (f(t)) \, dt \forall \varphi \in X^*. \]

Since the right member of the previous equation is the standard real variable Riemann or Lebesgue integral, it is independent of the choice of partitions, \( \{ \Pi_n \} \), and of the corresponding \( \varphi \)'s and we may conclude \( \lim_{n \to \infty} S_{\Pi_n} (f) \) is also independent of any choices we made. We have now shown that \( f \in L^1_{\text{pet}} (m; X) \) and that

\[ \int_a^b f(t) \, dt = \lim_{n \to \infty} S_{\Pi_n} (f). \]

To prove the estimate in Eq. (1.8), simply choose \( \{ \Pi_n \}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) as above so that \( \Pi \subset \Pi_1 \) and then from Eq. (1.9) it follows that

\[ \| S_{\Pi} (f) - S_{\Pi_n} (f) \| \leq \text{osc}_{\Pi_{m,n}} (f) \cdot (b - a) \forall n \in \mathbb{N}. \]

Letting \( n \to \infty \) in this inequality gives the estimate in Eq. (1.8).

\[ \] 

Remark 1.8. Let \( f \in C (\mathbb{R}, X) \). We leave the proof of the following properties to the reader with the caveat that many of the properties follow directly from their real variable cousins after testing the identities against a \( \varphi \in X^* \).

1. For \( a < b < c \),

\[ \int_a^c f(t) \, dt = \int_a^b f(t) \, dt + \int_b^c f(t) \, dt \]

and moreover this result holds independent of the ordering of \( a, b, c \in \mathbb{R} \) provided we define,

\[ \int_a^c f(t) \, dt := -\int_c^a f(t) \, dt \text{ when } c < a. \]

2. For all \( a \in \mathbb{R} \),

\[ \frac{d}{dt} \int_a^t f(s) \, ds = f(t) \text{ for all } t \in \mathbb{R}. \]

3. If \( f \in C^1 (\mathbb{R}, X) \), then

\[ f(t) - f(s) = \int_s^t \dot{f}(\tau) \, d\tau \forall s, t \in \mathbb{R} \]

where

\[ \dot{f}(t) := \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(t+h) - f(t)}{h} \in X. \]

4. Again the triangle inequality holds,

\[ \left\| \int_a^b f(t) \, dt \right\|_X \leq \int_a^b \| f(t) \|_X \, dt \forall a, b \in \mathbb{R}. \]

Exercise 1.2. Suppose that \( (X, \| \|) \) is a Banach space, \( J = (a, b) \) with \( -\infty \leq a < b \leq \infty \) and \( f_n : J \to X \) are continuously differentiable functions such that there exists a summable sequence \( \{ a_n \}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) satisfying

\[ \| f_n (t) \| + \| \dot{f}_n (t) \| \leq a_n \text{ for all } t \in J \text{ and } n \in \mathbb{N}. \]  

(1.10)

Show:

1. \( \sup \left\{ \left\| \frac{f_n(t+h) - f_n(t)}{h} \right\| : (t, h) \in J \times \mathbb{R} \implies t + h \in J \text{ and } h \neq 0 \right\} \leq a_n \).

2. The function \( F : \mathbb{R} \to X \) defined by

\[ F(t) := \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f_n(t) \text{ for all } t \in J \]

is differentiable and for \( t \in J \),

\[ \dot{F}(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \dot{f}_n(t). \]

Definition 1.9. A function \( f \) from an open set \( \Omega \subset \mathbb{C} \) to a complex Banach space \( X \) is analytic on \( \Omega \) if

\[ f'(z) := \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(z+h) - f(z)}{h} \text{ exists } \forall z \in \Omega \]

and is weakly analytic on \( \Omega \) if \( \ell \circ f \) is analytic on \( \Omega \) for every \( \ell \in X^* \).

Analytic functions are trivially weakly analytic and next theorem shows the converse is true as well. In what follows let

\[ D(z_0, \rho) := \{ z \in \mathbb{C} : |z - z_0| < \rho \} \]

be the open disk in \( \mathbb{C} \) centered at \( z_0 \) of radius \( \rho > 0 \).
Theorem 1.10. If $f : \Omega \to X$ is a weakly analytic function then $f$ is analytic. Moreover if $z_0 \in \Omega$ and $\rho > 0$ is such that $D(z_0, \rho) \subset \Omega$, then for all $w \in D(z_0, \rho)$,

$$f(w) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\partial D(z_0, \rho)} \frac{f(z)}{z-w} \, dz,$$

(1.11)

$$f^{(n)}(w) = \frac{n!}{2\pi i} \oint_{\partial D(z_0, \rho)} \frac{f(z)}{(z-w)^{n+1}} \, dz,$$  

and plug this identity into Eq. (1.11) to discover,

$$f(w) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n (w - z_0)^n$$

where

$$a_n = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\partial D(z_0, \rho)} \frac{f(z)}{(z-z_0)^{n+1}} \, dz = f^{(n)}(z_0).$$

Remark 1.11. If $X$ is a complex Banach space, $J$ is an open subset of $C$, and $f_n : J \to X$ are analytic functions such that Eq. (1.10) holds, then the results of the Exercise 1.2 continue to hold provided $\int f_n(t)$ and $f(t)$ is replaced by $\int f_n'(z)$ and $f'(z)$ everywhere. In particular, if $\{a_n\} \subset X$ and $\rho > 0$ are such that

$$f(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n (z - z_0)^n$$

is convergent for $|z - z_0| < \rho$,

then $f$ is analytic in on $D(z_0, \rho)$ and

$$f'(z) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} na_n (z - z_0)^{n-1}.$$

Corollary 1.12 (Liouville’s Theorem). Suppose that $f : C \to X$ is a bounded analytic function, then $f(z) = x_0$ for some $x_0 \in X$.

Proof. Let $M := \sup_{z \in C} \|f(z)\|$ which is finite by assumption. From Eq. (1.12) with $z_0 = 0$ and simple estimates it follows that

$$\|f'(w)\| = \left\| \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\partial D(z_0, \rho)} \frac{f(z)}{(z-w)^{n+1}} \, dz \right\| \leq M \max_{|\rho| \leq \rho} \frac{\rho}{|\rho e^{i\theta} - w|^2}.$$  

Letting $\rho \uparrow \infty$ in this inequality shows $\|f'(w)\| = 0$ for all $w \in C$ and hence $f$ is constant by FTC or by noting that the power series expansion is $f(w) = f(0) = x_0$.

Alternatively: one can simply apply the standard Liouville’s theorem to $\xi \circ f$ for $\xi \in X^*$ in order to show $\xi \circ f(z) = \xi \circ f(0)$ for each $z \in C$. As $\xi \in X^*$ was arbitrary it follows that $f(z) = f(0) = x_0$ for all $z \in C$.

Exercise 1.3 (Conway, Exr. 4, p. 198 cont.). Let $H$ be a separable Hilbert space. Give an example of a discontinuous function, $f : [0, \infty) \to H$, such that $t \to \langle f(t), h \rangle$ is continuous for all $t \geq 0$. 

1.3 Bochner Integral (integrands with separable range)

The main results of this section are summarized in the following theorem.

**Theorem 1.13.** If we suppose that $X$ is a separable Banach space, then:

1. The Borel $\sigma$-algebra $(\mathcal{B}_X)$ on $X$ is the same as $\sigma(X^*)$ – the $\sigma$-algebra generated by $X^*$.
2. The $\|\cdot\|_X$ is then of course $\mathcal{B}_X = \sigma(X^*)$ measurable.
3. The Pettis integrable functions are now easily describe as $\sigma \{\omega, J\}

4. The rest of this section is now essentially devoted to the proof of Theorem 1.13.

**Exercise 1.4** (Differentiate past the integral). Suppose that $J = (a, b) \subset \mathbb{R}$ is a non-empty open interval, $f : J \times \Omega \rightarrow X$ is a function such that:

1. for each $t \in J$, $f(t, \cdot) \in L^1(\mu; X)$,
2. for each $\omega$, $J \ni t \rightarrow f(t, \omega)$ is a $C^1$-function.
3. There exists $g \in L^1(\mu)$ such that $\|f(t, \omega)\|_X \leq g(\omega)$ for all $\omega$ where $\hat{f}(t, \omega) := \frac{d}{dt} f(t, \omega)$.

Then $F : J \rightarrow X$ defined by

$$F(t) := \int_{J} f(t, \omega) d\mu(\omega)$$

is a $C^1$-function with

$$\hat{F}(t) = \int_{J} \hat{f}(t, \omega) d\mu(\omega).$$

The rest of this section is now essentially devoted to the proof of Theorem 1.13.

1.3.1 Proof of Theorem 1.13

**Proposition 1.14.** If $X$ is a separable Banach space, there exists $\{\varphi_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \subset X^*$ such that $\|x\| = \sup_n |\varphi_n(x)|$ for all $x \in X$.

**Proof.** If $\varphi \in X^*$, then $\varphi : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous and hence Borel measurable. Therefore $\sigma(X^*) \subset \mathcal{B}$.

For the converse, choose $x_n \in X$ such that $\|x_n\| = 1$ for all $n$ and

$$\{x_n\} = S = \{x \in X : \|x\| = 1\}.$$  

By the Hahn Banach Theorem ?? (or Corollary ?? with $x = x_n$ and $M = \{0\}$), there exists $\varphi_n \in X^*$ such that i) $\varphi_n(x_n) = 1$ and ii) $\|\varphi_n\|_{X^*} = 1$ for all $n$.

As $|\varphi_n(x)| \leq \|x\|$ for all $n$ we certainly have $\sup_n |\varphi_n(x)| \leq \|x\|$. For the converse inequality, let $x \in X \setminus \{0\}$ and choose $\{n_k\}_{k=1}^{\infty} \subset \mathbb{N}$ such that $x/\|x\| = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} x_{n_k}$. It then follows that

$$|\varphi_{n_k}\left(\frac{x}{\|x\|}\right)| - 1 = |\varphi_{n_k}\left(\frac{x}{\|x\|} - x_{n_k}\right)| \leq \frac{x}{\|x\|} - x_{n_k} \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } k \rightarrow \infty,$$

i.e. $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} |\varphi_{n_k}(x)| = \|x\|$ which shows $\sup_n |\varphi_n(x)| \geq \|x\|$.

**Corollary 1.15.** If $X$ is a separable Banach space, then Borel $\sigma$-algebra of $X$ and the $\sigma$-algebra generated by $\varphi \in X^*$ are the same, i.e. $\sigma(X^*) = \mathcal{B}_X$ – the Borel $\sigma$-algebra on $X$.

**Proof.** Since every $\varphi \in X^*$ is continuous it $\mathcal{B}_X$ – measurable and hence $\sigma(X^*) \subset \mathcal{B}_X$. For the converse inclusion, let $\{\varphi_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \subset X^*$ be as in Proposition ??.

We then have for any $x_0 \in X$ that

$$\|x - x_0\| = \sup_n |\varphi_n(x - x_0)| = \sup_n |\varphi_n(x) - \varphi_n(x_0)|.$$

This shows $\|x - x_0\|$ is $\sigma(X^*)$-measurable for each $x_0 \in X$ and hence

$$\{x : \|x - x_0\| < \delta\} \in \sigma(X^*).$$

Hence $\sigma(X^*)$ contains all open balls in $X$. As $X$ is separable, every open set may be written as a countable union of open balls and therefore we may conclude $\sigma(X^*)$ contains all open sets and hence $\mathcal{B}_X \subset \sigma(X^*)$.

**Corollary 1.16.** If $X$ is a separable Banach space, then a function $u : \Omega \rightarrow X$ is $\mathcal{F}/\mathcal{B}_X$ – measurable iff $\lambda \circ u : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is measurable for all $\lambda \in X^*$.

**Proof.** This follows directly from Corollary 1.15 of the appendix which asserts that $\sigma(X^*) = \mathcal{B}_X$ when $X$ is separable.
Corollary 1.17. If \( X \) is separable and \( u_n : \Omega \to X \) are measurable functions such that \( u(\omega) := \lim_{n \to \infty} u_n(\omega) \) exists in \( X \) for all \( \omega \in \Omega \), then \( u : \Omega \to X \) is measurable as well.

Proof. We need only observe that for any \( \lambda \in X^* \), \( \lambda \circ u = \lim\sup_{n \to \infty} \lambda \circ u_n \) is measurable and hence the result follows from Corollary 1.16. \( \blacksquare \)

Corollary 1.18. If \((\Omega, F, \mu)\) is a measure space and \( X \) is a separable Banach space, a function \( u : \Omega \to X \) is weakly integrable iff \( u : \Omega \to X \) is \( F/B(X) \) measurable and

\[
\int_{\Omega} \|u(\omega)\| \, d\mu(\omega) < \infty.
\]

Corollary 1.19. Suppose that \((\Omega, F, \mu)\) is a measure space and \( F, G : \Omega \to X \) are \( F/B(X) \) measurable functions. Then \( F(\omega) = G(\omega) \) for \( \mu \) - a.e. \( \omega \in \Omega \) iff \( \varphi \circ F(\omega) = \varphi \circ G(\omega) \) for \( \mu \) - a.e. \( \omega \in \Omega \) and every \( \varphi \in X^* \).

Proof. The direction, \( \Rightarrow \), is clear. For the converse direction let \( \{ \varphi_n \} \subset X^* \) be as in Proposition 1.14 and for \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), let

\[
E_n := \{ \omega \in \Omega : \varphi_n \circ F(\omega) \neq \varphi_n \circ G(\omega) \}.
\]

By assumption \( \mu(E_n) = 0 \) and therefore \( E := \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} E_n \) is a \( \mu \) - null set as well. This completes the proof since \( \varphi_n(F-G) = 0 \) on \( E^c \) and therefore, by Eq. 1.14

\[
\|F - G\| = \sup_n \|\varphi_n(F-G)\| = 0 \text{ on } E^c.
\]

Recall that we have already seen in this case that the Borel \( \sigma \) - field \( B \) on \( X \) is the same as the \( \sigma \) - field \((\sigma(X^*))\) which is generated by \( X^* \) - the continuous linear functionals on \( X \). As a consequence \( F : \Omega \to X \) is \( F/B(X) \) measurable iff \( \varphi \circ F : \Omega \to \mathbb{R} \) is \( F/B(\mathbb{R}) \) measurable for all \( \varphi \in X^* \). In particular it follows that if \( F, G : \Omega \to X \) are measurable functions then so is \( F + G \) and \( \lambda F \) for all \( \lambda \in \mathbb{F} \) and it follows that \( \{ F \neq G \} = \{ F - G \neq 0 \} \) is measurable as well. Also note that \( \| \cdot \| : X \to [0, \infty) \) is continuous and hence measurable and hence \( \omega \to \|F(\omega)\|_X \) is the composition of two measurable functions and therefore measurable.

Definition 1.20. For \( 1 \leq p < \infty \) let \( L^p(\mu; X) \) denote the space of measurable functions \( F : \Omega \to X \) such that \( \int \|F\|^p \, d\mu < \infty \). For \( F \in L^p(\mu; X) \), define

\[
\|F\|_{L^p} = \left( \int_{\Omega} \|F\|^p \, d\mu \right)^{\frac{1}{p}}.
\]

As usual in \( L^p \) - spaces we will identify two measurable functions, \( F, G : \Omega \to X \), if \( F = G \) a.e.

Lemma 1.21. Suppose \( a_n \in X \) and \( \|a_{n+1} - a_n\| \leq \varepsilon_n \) and \( \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \varepsilon_n < \infty \). Then

\[
\lim_{n \to \infty} a_n = a \in X \text{ exists and } \|a - a_n\| \leq \delta_n := \sum_{k=n}^{\infty} \varepsilon_k.
\]

Proof. Let \( m > n \) then

\[
\|a_m - a_n\| = \left( \sum_{k=n}^{m-1} \|a_{k+1} - a_k\| \right) \leq \sum_{k=n}^{m-1} \|a_{k+1} - a_k\| \leq \sum_{k=n}^{\infty} \varepsilon_k := \delta_n.
\]

So \( \|a_m - a_n\| \leq \delta_{\min(m,n)} \to 0 \) as \( m, n \to \infty \), i.e. \( \{a_n\} \) is Cauchy. Let \( m \to \infty \) in (1.15) to find \( \|a - a_n\| \leq \delta_n \). \( \blacksquare \)

Lemma 1.22. Suppose that \( \{F_n\} \) is Cauchy in measure, i.e. \( \lim_{n,m \to \infty} \mu(\|F_n - F_m\| \geq \varepsilon) = 0 \) for all \( \varepsilon > 0 \). Then there exists a subsequence \( G_j = F_{n_j} \) such that \( F := \lim_{j \to \infty} G_j \) exists \( \mu \) - a.e. and moreover \( F_n \xrightarrow{\mu} F \) as \( n \to \infty \), i.e. \( \lim_{n \to \infty} \mu(\|F_n - F\| \geq \varepsilon) = 0 \) for all \( \varepsilon > 0 \).

Proof. Let \( \varepsilon_n > 0 \) such that \( \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \varepsilon_n < \infty \) (\( \varepsilon_n = 2^{-n} \) would do) and set \( \delta_n = \sum_{k=n}^{\infty} \varepsilon_k \). Choose \( G_j = F_{n_j} \) where \( \{n_j\} \) is a subsequence of \( \mathbb{N} \) such that

\[
\mu(\|G_{j+1} - G_j\| > \varepsilon_j) \leq \varepsilon_j.
\]

Let

\[
A_N := \bigcup_{j \geq N} \{ \|G_{j+1} - G_j\| > \varepsilon_j \} \quad \text{and} \quad E := \bigcap_{N=1}^{\infty} A_N = \{ \|G_{j+1} - G_j\| > \varepsilon_j \text{ i.o.} \}.
\]

Since \( \mu(A_N) \leq \delta_N < \infty \) and \( A_N \downarrow E \) it follows\(^1\) that \( 0 = \mu(E) = \lim_{N \to \infty} \mu(A_N) \). For \( \omega \notin E \), \( \|G_{j+1}(\omega) - G_j(\omega)\| \leq \varepsilon_j \) for a.a. \( j \) and hence by Lemma 1.21

\[
F(\omega) := \lim_{j \to \infty} G_j(\omega) \text{ exists for } \omega \notin E. \quad \text{Let us define } F(\omega) = 0 \text{ for all } \omega \in E.
\]

Next we will show \( G_N \xrightarrow{\mu} F \) as \( N \to \infty \) where \( F \) and \( G_N \) are as above. If \( \omega \in A_N = \bigcap_{j \geq N} \{ \|G_{j+1} - G_j\| \leq \varepsilon_j \} \), then

\[
\|G_{j+1}(\omega) - G_j(\omega)\| \leq \varepsilon_j \text{ for all } j \geq N.
\]

Another application of Lemma 1.21 shows \( \|F(\omega) - G_j(\omega)\| \leq \delta_j \) for all \( j \geq N \), i.e.
\( A_N \subset \bigcap_{j \geq N} \{ \| F - G_j \| \leq \delta_j \} \subset \{ \| F - G_N \| \leq \delta_N \} \).

Therefore, by taking complements of this equation, \( \{ \| F - G_N \| > \delta_N \} \subset A_N \)
and hence
\[
\mu(\{ \| F - G_N \| > \delta_N \}) \leq \mu(A_N) \leq \delta_N \to 0 \text{ as } N \to \infty
\]
and in particular, \( G_N \overset{\mu}{\to} F \) as \( N \to \infty \).

With this in hand, it is straightforward to show \( F_n \overset{\mu}{\to} F \). Indeed, by the
usual trick, for all \( j \in \mathbb{N} \),
\[
\mu(\{ \| F_n - F \| > \epsilon \}) \leq \mu(\{ \| F - G_j \| > \epsilon/2 \}) + \mu(\| G_j - F \| > \epsilon/2) .
\]
Therefore, letting \( j \to \infty \) in this inequality gives,
\[
\mu(\{ \| F_n - F \| > \epsilon \}) \leq \limsup_{j \to \infty} \mu(\| G_j - F \| > \epsilon/2) \to 0 \text{ as } n \to \infty ,
\]
wherein we have used \( \{ F_n \}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) is Cauchy in measure and \( G_j \overset{\mu}{\to} F \).

**Theorem 1.23.** For each \( p \in [0, \infty) \), the space \( (L^p(\mu; X), \| \cdot \|_{L^p}) \) is a Banach space.

**Proof.** It is straightforward to check that \( \| \cdot \|_{L^p} \) is a norm. For example,
\[
\| F + G \|_{L^p} = \left( \int_{\Omega} \| F + G \|_X^p \, d\mu \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \leq \left( \int_{\Omega} (\| F \|_X + \| G \|_X)^p \, d\mu \right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \leq \| F \|_{L^p} + \| G \|_{L^p} .
\]
So the main point is to prove completeness of the norm.

Let \( \{ F_n \}_{n=1}^{\infty} \subset L^p(\mu) \) be a Cauchy sequence. By Chebyshev’s inequality \( \{ F_n \} \) is Cauchy in measure and by Lemma 1.22 there exists a subsequence \( \{ G_j \} \) of \( \{ F_n \} \) such that \( G_j \to F \) a.e. By Fatou’s Lemma,
\[
\| G_j - F \|_p = \int_{\Omega} \liminf_{k \to \infty} \| G_j - G_k \|_p \, d\mu \leq \liminf_{k \to \infty} \int_{\Omega} \| G_j - G_k \|_p \, d\mu \to 0 \text{ as } j \to \infty.
\]
In particular, \( \| F \|_p \leq \| G_j - F \|_p + \| G_j \|_p < \infty \) so the \( F \in L^p \) and \( G_j \overset{L^p}{\to} F \).

The proof is finished because,
\[
\| F_n - F \|_p \leq \| F_n - G_j \|_p + \| G_j - F \|_p \to 0 \text{ as } j, n \to \infty .
\]

---

**Definition 1.24 (Simple functions).** We say a function \( F : \Omega \to X \) is a
simple function if \( F \) is measurable and has finite range. If \( F \) also satisfies,
\( \mu(\{ F \neq 0 \}) < \infty \) we say that \( F \) is a \( \mu \) – simple function and let \( S(\mu; X) \) denote
the vector space of \( \mu \) – simple functions.

**Proposition 1.25.** For each \( 1 \leq p < \infty \) the \( \mu \) – simple functions, \( S(\mu; X) \),
are dense inside of \( L^p(\mu; X) \).

**Proof.** Let \( D := \{ x_n \}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) be a countable dense subset of \( X \setminus \{ 0 \} \).
For each \( \epsilon > 0 \) and \( n \in \mathbb{N} \) let
\[
B_{\epsilon/n} := \left\{ x \in X : \| x - x_n \| \leq \min \left( \frac{\epsilon}{2}, \frac{1}{2} \| x_n \| \right) \right\}
\]
and then define \( A_{\epsilon/n} := B_{\epsilon/n} \setminus \bigcup_{k=1}^{n} B_{\epsilon/k} \). Thus \( \{ A_{\epsilon/n} \}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) is a partition of \( X \setminus \{ 0 \} \) with the added property that \( \| y - x_n \| \leq \epsilon \) and \( \frac{1}{2} \| x_n \| \leq \| y \| \leq \frac{3}{2} \| x_n \| \) for all \( y \in A_{\epsilon/n} \).

Given \( F \in L^p(\mu; X) \) let
\[
F_\epsilon := \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x_n \cdot 1_{F \in A_{\epsilon/n}} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x_n \cdot 1_{F^{-1}(A_{\epsilon/n})}. 
\]
For \( \omega \in F^{-1}(A_{\epsilon/n}) \), i.e. \( F(\omega) \in A_{\epsilon/n} \), we have
\[
\| F_\epsilon(\omega) \| = \| x_n \| \leq 2 \| F(\omega) \| \text{ and } \| F_\epsilon(\omega) - F(\omega) \| = \| x_n - F(\omega) \| \leq \epsilon.
\]
Putting these two estimates together shows,
\[
\| F_\epsilon - F \| \leq \epsilon \text{ and } \| F_\epsilon - F \| \leq \| F_\epsilon \| + \| F \| \leq 3 \| F \| .
\]

Hence we may now apply the dominated convergence theorem in order to show
\[
\lim_{\epsilon \downarrow 0} \| F - F_\epsilon \|_{L^p(\mu; X)} = 0.
\]
As the \( F \) have countable range we have not yet completed the proof. To remedy this defect, to each \( N \in \mathbb{N} \) let
\[
F_{\epsilon/N} := \sum_{n=1}^{N} x_n \cdot 1_{F^{-1}(A_{\epsilon/n})}. 
\]
Then it is clear that \( \lim_{N \to \infty} F_{\epsilon/N} = F_\epsilon \) and that \( \| F_{\epsilon/N} \| \leq \| F_\epsilon \| \leq 2 \| F \| \) for all \( N \).
Therefore another application of the dominated convergence theorem implies, \( \lim_{N \to \infty} \| F_{\epsilon/N} - F_\epsilon \|_{L^p(\mu; X)} = 0 \). Thus any \( F \in L^p(\mu; X) \) may be arbitrarily well approximated by one of the \( F_{\epsilon/N} \in S(\mu; X) \) with \( \epsilon \) sufficiently small and \( N \) sufficiently large.

For later purposes it will be useful to record a result based on the partitions \( \{ A_{\epsilon/n} \}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) of \( X \setminus \{ 0 \} \) introduced in the above proof.
Lemma 1.26. Suppose that \( F : \Omega \to X \) is a measurable function such that \( \mu(F \neq 0) > 0 \). Then there exists \( B \in \mathcal{F} \) and \( \varphi \in X^* \) such that \( \mu(B) > 0 \) and 
\[
\inf_{\omega \in B} \varphi \circ F(\omega) > 0.
\]

Proof. Let \( \varepsilon > 0 \) be chosen arbitrarily, for example you might take \( \varepsilon = 1 \) and let \( \{ A_n : A_n \cap \{ 0 \} \}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) be the partition of \( X \setminus \{ 0 \} \) introduced in the proof of Proposition 1.25 above. Since \( \{ F \neq 0 \} \cup \{ F \in A_n \} \) and \( \mu(F \neq 0) > 0 \), it follows that \( \mu(F \in A_n) > 0 \) for some \( n \in \mathbb{N} \). We now let \( B := \{ F \in A_n \} = F^{-1}(A_n) \) and choose \( \varphi \in X^* \) such that \( \varphi(x_n) = \| x_n \| \) and \( \| \varphi \|_{X^*} = 1 \). For \( \omega \in B \) we have \( F(\omega) \in A_n \) and therefore \( \| F(\omega) - x_n \| \leq \frac{1}{2} \| x_n \| \) and hence,
\[
\| \varphi(F(\omega)) - \| x_n \| \| = \| \varphi(F(\omega)) - \varphi(x_n) \| \leq \| \varphi \|_{X^*} \| F(\omega) - x_n \| \leq \frac{1}{2} \| x_n \| .
\]
From this inequality we see that \( \varphi(F(\omega)) \geq \frac{1}{2} \| x_n \| > 0 \) for all \( \omega \in B \). □

Definition 1.27. To each \( F \in \mathcal{S}(\mu; X) \), let
\[
I(F) = \sum_{x \in X} x \mu(F^{-1}(\{x\})) = \sum_{x \in X} x \mu(\{F = x\})
\]
\[
= \sum_{x \in F(\Omega)} x \mu(F = x) \in X.
\]

The following proposition is straightforward to prove.

Proposition 1.28. The map \( I : \mathcal{S}(\mu; X) \to X \) is linear and satisfies for all \( F \in \mathcal{S}(\mu; X) \),
\[
\| I(F) \|_X \leq \int_{\Omega} \| F \| \, d\mu \quad \text{and} \quad (1.16)
\]
\[
\varphi(I(F)) = \int_{\Omega} \varphi \circ F \, d\mu \forall \varphi \in X^*. \quad (1.17)
\]
More generally, if \( T \in B(X,Y) \) where \( Y \) is another Banach space then
\[
TI(F) = I(TF).
\]

Proof. If \( 0 \neq c \in \mathbb{R} \) and \( F \in \mathcal{S}(\mu; X) \), then
\[
I(cf) = \sum_{x \in X} x \mu(cf = x) = \sum_{x \in X} x \mu(F = \frac{x}{c})
\]
\[
= \sum_{y \in X} cy \mu(F = y) = cI(F)
\]
and if \( c = 0 \), \( I(0F) = 0 = 0I(F) \). If \( F,G \in \mathcal{S}(\mu; X) \),
\[
I(F + G) = \sum_{x} x \mu(F + G = x)
\]
\[
= \sum_{x} x \sum_{y+z=x} \mu(F = y, G = z)
\]
\[
= \sum_{y,z} \mu(F = y) + \sum_{z} z \mu(G = z) = I(F) + I(G).
\]

Equation (1.16) is a consequence of the following computation:
\[
\| I(F) \|_X = \| \sum_{x \in X} x \mu(F = x) \| \leq \sum_{x \in X} \| x \| \mu(F = x) = \int_{\Omega} \| F \| \, d\mu
\]
and Eq. (1.17) follows from:
\[
\varphi(I(F)) = \varphi(\sum_{x \in X} x \mu(\{F = x\}))
\]
\[
= \sum_{x \in X} \varphi(x) \mu(\{F = x\}) = \int_{\Omega} \varphi \circ F \, d\mu.
\]

The next elementary theorem (referred to as the bounded linear transformation theorem, or B.L.T. theorem for short) is often useful when constructing bounded linear transformations.

Theorem 1.29 (B. L. T. Theorem). Suppose that \( Z \) is a normed space, \( X \) is a Banach space, and \( \mathcal{S} \subset Z \) is a dense linear subspace of \( Z \). If \( T : \mathcal{S} \to X \) is a bounded linear transformation (i.e. there exists \( C < \infty \) such that \( \| Tx \| \leq C \| x \| \) for all \( x \in \mathcal{S} \), then \( T \) has a unique extension to an element \( \bar{T} \in L(Z,X) \) and this extension still satisfies
\[
\| \bar{T}z \| \leq C \| z \| \quad \text{for all} \quad z \in \mathcal{S}.
\]

Proof. The proof is left to the reader. □

Theorem 1.30 (Bochner Integral). There is a unique continuous linear map \( \bar{I} : L^1(\Omega, F, \mu; X) \to X \) such that \( \bar{I}_{|\mathcal{S}(\mu; X)} = I \) where \( I \) is defined in Definition 1.27
Moreover, for all \( F \in L^1(\Omega, F, \mu; X) \),
\[
\| \bar{I}(F) \|_X \leq \int_{\Omega} \| F \| \, d\mu \quad (1.18)
\]
and \( \bar{I}(F) \) is the unique element in \( X \) such that
\[ \varphi(I(F)) = \int_{\Omega} \varphi \circ F \, d\mu \forall \varphi \in X^*. \quad (1.19) \]

The map \( I(F) \) will be denoted suggestively by \( \int_{\Omega} F d\mu \) or \( \mu(F) \) so that Eq. (1.19) may be written as

\[ \varphi \left( \int_{\Omega} F d\mu \right) = \int_{\Omega} \varphi \circ F \, d\mu \forall \varphi \in X^* \text{ or } \varphi(\mu(F)) = \mu(\varphi \circ F) \forall \varphi \in X^* \]

It is also true that if \( T \in B(X,Y) \) where \( Y \) is another Banach space, then

\[ \int_{\Omega} TF d\mu = T \int_{\Omega} F d\mu \]

where one should interpret TF : \( \Omega \to \overline{TX} \) which is a separable subspace of \( Y \) even if \( Y \) is not separable.

**Proof.** The existence of a continuous linear map \( I : L^1(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mu; X) \to X \) such that \( I(\mathcal{S}(\mu; X)) = I \) and Eq. (1.18) holds follows from Propositions 1.28 and 1.29 and the bounded linear transformation Theorem 1.29. If \( \varphi \in X^* \) and \( F \in L^1(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mu; X) \), choose \( F_n \in \mathcal{S}(\mu; X) \) such that \( F_n \to F \) in \( L^1(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mu; X) \) as \( n \to \infty \). Then \( I(F) = \lim_{n \to \infty} I(F_n) \) and hence by Eq. (1.17),

\[ \varphi(I(F)) = \varphi(\lim_{n \to \infty} I(F_n)) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \varphi(I(F_n)) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{\Omega} \varphi \circ F_n \, d\mu. \]

This proves Eq. (1.19) since

\[ \left| \int_{\Omega} (\varphi \circ F - \varphi \circ F_n) \, d\mu \right| \leq \int_{\Omega} |\varphi \circ F - \varphi \circ F_n| \, d\mu \leq \int_{\Omega} \|\varphi\|_{X^*} \|F - F_n\|_X \, d\mu \to 0 \text{ as } n \to \infty. \]

The fact that \( I(F) \) is determined by Eq. (1.19) is a consequence of the Hahn–Banach theorem.

**Example 1.31.** Suppose that \( x \in X \) and \( f \in L^1(\mu; \mathbb{R}) \), then \( F(\omega) := f(\omega) \, x \) defines an element of \( L^1(\mu; X) \) and

\[ \int_{\Omega} F d\mu = \left( \int_{\Omega} f d\mu \right) x. \quad (1.20) \]

To prove this just observe that \( \|F\| = |f| \|x\| \in L^1(\mu) \) and for \( \varphi \in X^* \) we have

\[ \varphi \left( \int_{\Omega} f d\mu \right) x = \left( \int_{\Omega} f d\mu \right) \varphi(x) = \left( \int_{\Omega} f \varphi(x) d\mu \right) = \int_{\Omega} \varphi \circ F d\mu. \]

Since \( \varphi \left( \int_{\Omega} F d\mu \right) = \int_{\Omega} \varphi \circ F \, d\mu \) for all \( \varphi \in X^* \) it follows that Eq. (1.20) is correct.

**Definition 1.32 (Essential Range).** Suppose that \( (\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mu) \) is a measure space, \( (Y, \rho) \) is a metric space, and \( q : \Omega \to Y \) is a measurable function. We then define the essential range of \( q \) to be the set,

\[ \text{essran}_\mu(q) = \{ y \in Y : \mu(\{ \rho(q, y) < \varepsilon \}) > 0 \forall \varepsilon > 0 \}. \]

In other words, \( y \in Y \) is in \( \text{essran}_\mu(q) \) iff \( q \) lies in \( B_\rho(y, \varepsilon) \) with positive \( \mu \)-measure.

**Remark 1.33.** The separability assumption on \( X \) may be relaxed by assuming that \( F : \Omega \to X \) has separable essential range. In this case we may still define \( \int_{\Omega} F d\mu \) by applying the above formalism with \( X \) replaced by the separable Banach space, \( X_0 := \text{span}(\text{essran}_\mu(F)) \). For example if \( \Omega \) is a compact topological space and \( F : \Omega \to X \) is a continuous map, then \( \int_{\Omega} F d\mu \) is always defined.

**Theorem 1.34 (DCT).** If \( \{ u_n \} \subset L^1(\mu; X) \) is such that \( u(\omega) = \lim_{n \to \infty} u_n(\omega) \) exists for \( \mu \)-a.e. \( x \) and there exists \( g \in L^1(\mu) \) such that \( \|u_n\|_X \leq g \) a.e. for all \( n \), then \( u \in L^1(\mu; X) \) and \( \lim_{n \to \infty} \|u - u_n\|_1 = 0 \) and in particular,

\[ \left\| \int_{\Omega} u d\mu - \int_{\Omega} u_n d\mu \right\|_X \leq \|u - u_n\|_1 \to 0 \text{ as } n \to \infty. \]

**Proof.** Since \( \|u(\omega)\|_X = \lim_{n \to \infty} \|u_n(\omega)\| \leq g(\omega) \) for a.e. \( \omega \), it follows that \( u \in L^1(\mu, X) \). Moreover, \( \|u - u_n\|_X \leq 2g \) a.e. and \( \lim_{n \to \infty} \|u - u_n\|_X = 0 \) a.e. and therefore by the real variable dominated convergence theorem it follows that

\[ \|u - u_n\|_1 = \int_{\Omega} \|u - u_n\|_X d\mu \to 0 \text{ as } n \to \infty. \]

**1.4 Strong Bochner Integrals**

Let us again assume that \( X \) is a separable Banach space but now suppose that \( C : \Omega \to B(X) \) is the type of function we wish to integrate. As \( B(X) \) is
typically not separable, we can not directly apply the theory of the last section. However, there is an easy solution which will briefly describe here.

**Definition 1.35.** We say $C : \Omega \to B(X)$ is strongly measurable if $\Omega \ni \omega \to C(\omega) x$ is measurable for all $x \in X$.

**Lemma 1.36.** If $C : \Omega \to B(X)$ is strongly measurable, then $\Omega \ni \omega \to ||C(\omega)||_\text{op}$ is measurable.

**Proof.** Let $D$ be a dense subset of the unit vectors in $X$. Then

$$||C(\omega)||_\text{op} = \sup_{x \in D} ||C(\omega) x||_X$$

is measurable. \hfill \blacksquare

**Lemma 1.37.** Suppose that $u : \Omega \to X$ is measurable and $C : \Omega \to B(X)$ is strongly measurable, then $\Omega \ni \omega \to C(\omega) u(\omega) \in X$ is measurable.

**Proof.** Using the ideas in Proposition 1.25 we may find simple functions $u_n : \Omega \to X$ so that $u = \lim_{n \to \infty} u_n$. It is easy to verify that $C(\cdot) u_n(\cdot)$ is measurable for all $n$ and that $C(\cdot) u(\cdot) = \lim_{n \to \infty} C(\cdot) u_n(\cdot)$. The result now follows Corollary 1.17. \hfill \blacksquare

**Corollary 1.38.** Suppose $C,D : \Omega \to B(X)$ are strongly measurable, then $\Omega \ni \omega \to C(\omega) D(\omega) \in X$ is strongly measurable.

**Proof.** For $x \in X$, let $u(\omega) := D(\omega) x$ which is measurable by assumption. Therefore, $C(\cdot) D(\cdot) x = C(\cdot) u(\cdot)$ is measurable by Lemma 1.37. \hfill \blacksquare

**Definition 1.39.** We say $C : \Omega \to B(X)$ is **integrable** and write $C \in L^1(\mu : B(X))$ if $C$ is strongly measurable and

$$||C||_1 := \int_\Omega ||C(\omega)|| d\mu(\omega) < \infty.$$ 

In this case we further define $\mu(C) = \int_\Omega C(\omega) d\mu(\omega)$ to be the unique element $B(X)$ such that

$$\mu(C) x = \int_\Omega C(\omega) x d\mu(\omega) \text{ for all } x \in X.$$ 

It is easy to verify that this integral again has all of the usual properties of integral. In particular,

$$||\mu(C) x|| \leq \int_\Omega ||C(\omega) x|| d\mu(\omega) \leq \int_\Omega ||C(\omega)|| ||x|| d\mu(\omega) = ||C||_1 ||x||$$

from which it follows that $||\mu(C)||_\text{op} \leq ||C||_1$.

**Theorem 1.40.** Suppose that $\left(\tilde{\Omega}, \nu \right)$ is another measure space and $D \in L^1(\tilde{\mu} : B(X))$. Then

$$\mu(C) \nu(D) = \mu \otimes \nu(C \otimes D)$$

where $\mu \otimes \nu$ is product measure and

$$C \otimes D(\omega, \tilde{\omega}) := C(\omega) D(\tilde{\omega}).$$

**Proof.** Let $\pi_1 : \Omega \times \tilde{\Omega} \to \Omega$ and $\pi_2 : \Omega \times \tilde{\Omega} \to \tilde{\Omega}$ be the natural projection maps. Since $C \otimes D = [C \circ \pi_1] [D \circ \pi_2]$, we conclude from Corollary 1.38 that $C \otimes D$ is measurable on the product space. We further have

$$\int_{\Omega \times \tilde{\Omega}} ||C \otimes D(\omega, \tilde{\omega})||_{\text{op}} d\mu(\omega) d\nu(\tilde{\omega}) = \int_{\Omega \times \tilde{\Omega}} ||C(\omega) D(\tilde{\omega})||_{\text{op}} d\mu(\omega) d\nu(\tilde{\omega}) \leq \int_{\Omega \times \tilde{\Omega}} ||C(\omega)||_{\text{op}} ||D(\tilde{\omega})||_{\text{op}} d\mu(\omega) d\nu(\tilde{\omega}) = \int_{\tilde{\Omega}} ||D(\tilde{\omega})||_{\text{op}} d\nu(\tilde{\omega}) < \infty$$

and therefore $\mu \otimes \nu(C \otimes D)$ is well defined.

Now suppose that $x \in X$ and let $u_n$ be simple function in $L^1(\tilde{\Omega}, \nu)$ such that $\lim_{n \to \infty} ||u_n - D(\cdot) x||_{L^1(\nu)} = 0$. If $u_n = \sum_{k=0}^{M_n} a_k 1_{A_k}$ with $\{A_k\}_{k=1}^{M_n}$ being disjoint subsets of $\Omega$ and $a_k \in X$, then

$$C(\omega) u_n(\tilde{\omega}) = \sum_{k=0}^{M_n} a_k 1_{A_k}(\tilde{\omega}) C(\omega) a_k.$$ 

After another approximation argument for $\omega \to C(\omega) a_k$, we find,

$$\int_{\Omega \times \tilde{\Omega}} C(\omega) u_n(\tilde{\omega}) d[\mu \otimes \nu](\omega, \tilde{\omega}) = \sum_{k=0}^{M_n} \nu(A_k) \int_{\tilde{\Omega}} C(\omega) a_k d\mu(\omega) = \sum_{k=0}^{M_n} \nu(A_k) \mu(C) a_k$$

$$= \mu(C) \sum_{k=0}^{M_n} \nu(A_k) a_k = \mu(C) \nu(\mu_n).$$

(1.21)
we may pass to the limit in Eq. (1.21) in order to find
\[ x \]

Since,
\[ \int_{\Omega \times \tilde{\Omega}} \| C(\omega) u_n(\tilde{\omega}) - C(\omega) D(\tilde{\omega}) x \| d[\mu \otimes \nu](\omega, \tilde{\omega}) \leq \int_{\Omega \times \tilde{\Omega}} \| C(\omega) \|_{op} \| u_n(\tilde{\omega}) - D(\tilde{\omega}) x \| d\mu(\omega) d\nu(\tilde{\omega}) = \| C \|_1 \cdot \| u_n - D(\cdot) x \|_{L^1(\nu)} \to 0 \] as \( n \to \infty \),
we may pass to the limit in Eq. (1.21) in order to find
\[ \mu \otimes \nu (C \otimes D) x = \int_{\Omega \times \tilde{\Omega}} C(\omega) D(\tilde{\omega}) x d[\mu \otimes \nu](\omega, \tilde{\omega}) = \mu(C) \int_{\tilde{\Omega}} D(\tilde{\omega}) x d\nu(\tilde{\omega}) = \mu(C) \nu(D) x. \]
As \( x \in X \) was arbitrary the proof is complete.

**Exercise 1.5.** Suppose that \( U \) is an open subset of \( \mathbb{R} \) or \( \mathbb{C} \) and \( F : U \times \Omega \to X \) is a measurable function such that;
1. \( U \ni z \mapsto F(z, \omega) \) is (complex) differentiable for all \( \omega \in \Omega \).
2. \( F(z, \cdot) \in L^1(\mu : X) \) for all \( z \in U \).
3. There exists \( G \in L^1(\mu : \mathbb{R}) \) such that
   \[ \left\| \frac{\partial F(z, \omega)}{\partial z} \right\| \leq G(\omega) \] for all \( (z, \omega) \in U \times \Omega \).
Show
\[ U \ni z \mapsto \int_{\Omega} F(z, \omega) d\mu(\omega) \in X \]
is differentiable and
\[ \frac{d}{dz} \int_{\Omega} F(z, \omega) d\mu(\omega) = \int_{\Omega} \frac{\partial F(z, \omega)}{\partial z} d\mu(\omega). \]

### 1.5 Weak integrals for Hilbert Spaces

This section may be read independently of the previous material of this chapter. Although you should still learn about the fundamental theorem of calculus in Section ?? above at least for Hilbert space valued functions.

In this section, let \( F \) be either \( \mathbb{R} \) or \( \mathbb{C} \), \( H \) be a separable Hilbert space over \( F \), and \( (X, \mathcal{M}, \mu) \) and \( (Y, \mathcal{N}, \nu) \) be two \( \sigma \)-finite measures spaces.

**Definition 1.41.** A function \( \psi : X \to H \) is said to be weakly measurable if \( X \ni x \to \langle h, \psi(x) \rangle \in \mathbb{F} \) is \( \mathcal{M} \)-measurable for all \( h \in H \).

Notice that if \( \psi \) is weakly measurable, then \( \| \psi(\cdot) \| \) is measurable as well. Indeed, if \( D \) is a countable dense subset of \( H \setminus \{0\} \), then
\[ \| \psi(x) \| = \sup_{h \in D} \frac{|\langle h, \psi(x) \rangle|}{\|h\|}. \]

**Definition 1.42.** A function \( \psi : X \to H \) is weakly-integrable if \( \psi \) is weakly measurable and
\[ \|
\psi
\|
1
:= \int_X \| \psi(x) \| d\mu(x) < \infty. \]

We let \( L^1(X, \mu : H) \) denote the space of weakly integrable functions.

For \( \psi \in L^1(X, \mu : H) \), let
\[ f_\psi(h) := \int_X \langle h, \psi(x) \rangle d\mu(x) \]
and notice that \( f_\psi \in H^* \) with
\[ |f_\psi(h)| \leq \int_X |\langle h, \psi(x) \rangle| d\mu(x) \leq \|h\|_H \int_X \|\psi(x)\|_H d\mu(x) = \|\psi\|_1 \cdot \|h\|_H. \]

Thus by the Riesz theorem, there exists a unique element \( \bar{\psi} \in H \) such that
\[ \langle h, \bar{\psi} \rangle = f_\psi(h) = \int_X \langle h, \psi(x) \rangle d\mu(x) \text{ for all } h \in H. \]

We will denote this element, \( \bar{\psi} \), as
\[ \bar{\psi} = \int_X \psi(x) d\mu(x). \]

**Theorem 1.43.** There is a unique linear map,
\[ L^1(X, \mu : H) \ni \psi \mapsto \int_X \psi(x) d\mu(x) \in H, \]
such that
\[ \langle h, \int_X \psi(x) d\mu(x) \rangle = \int_X \langle h, \psi(x) \rangle d\mu(x) \text{ for all } h \in H. \]
Moreover this map satisfies;
A function

1. Vector Valued Integration Theory

1. We have

\[ \left\| \int_X \psi (x) \, d\mu (x) \right\|_H \leq \| \psi \|_{L^1(\mu; H)}. \]

2. If \( B \in L(H, K) \) is a bounded linear operator from \( H \) to \( K \), then

\[ B \int_X \psi (x) \, d\mu (x) = \int_X B\psi (x) \, d\mu (x). \]

3. If \( \{e_n\}_{n=1}^\infty \) is any orthonormal basis for \( H \), then

\[ \int_X \psi (x) \, d\mu (x) = \sum_{n=1}^\infty \left[ \int_X \langle \psi (x), e_n \rangle \, d\mu (x) \right] e_n. \]

**Proof.** We take each item in turn.

1. We have

\[ \left\| \int_X \psi (x) \, d\mu (x) \right\|_H = \sup_{\|h\|=1} \left\| \langle h, \int_X \psi (x) \, d\mu (x) \rangle \right\| = \sup_{\|h\|=1} \left| \int_X \langle h, \psi (x) \rangle \, d\mu (x) \right| \leq \| \psi \|_1 . \]

2. If \( k \in K \), then

\[ \left\langle B \int_X \psi (x) \, d\mu (x), k \right\rangle = \left\langle \int_X \psi (x) \, d\mu (x), B^*k \right\rangle = \int_X \langle \psi (x), B^*k \rangle \, d\mu (x) = \int_X (B\psi (x), k) \, d\mu (x) = \left\langle \int_X B\psi (x) \, d\mu (x), k \right\rangle \]

and this suffices to verify item 2.

3. Lastly,

\[ \int_X \psi (x) \, d\mu (x) = \sum_{n=1}^\infty \left[ \int_X \langle \psi (x), e_n \rangle \, d\mu (x) \right] e_n \]

Again if \( C \) is weakly measurable, then

\[ X \ni x \to \| C(x) \|_\text{op} := \sup_{h,k \in D} \left| \langle C(x)h, k \rangle \right| / \| h \| \cdot \| k \| \]

is measurable as well.

**Definition 1.45.** A function \( C : X \to B(H) \) is **weakly-integrable** if \( C \) is weakly measurable and

\[ \| C \|_1 := \int_X \| C(x) \| \, d\mu (x) < \infty . \]

We let \( L^1(X, \mu : B(H)) \) denote the space of weakly integrable \( B(H) \)-valued functions.

**Theorem 1.46.** If \( C \in L^1(\mu : B(H)) \), then there exists a unique \( \bar{C} \in B(H) \) such that

\[ \bar{C}v = \int_X [C(x)v] \, d\mu (x) \quad \text{for all } v \in H \] (1.22)

and \( \| \bar{C} \| \leq \| C \|_1 . \)

**Proof.** By very definition, \( X \ni x \to (C(x)v) \in H \) is weakly measurable for each \( v \in H \) and moreover

\[ \int_X \| C(x)v \| \, d\mu (x) \leq \int_X \| C(x) \| \| v \| \, d\mu (x) = \| C \|_1 \| v \| < \infty . \] (1.23)

Therefore the integral in Eq. (1.22) is well defined. By the linearity of the weak integral on \( H \)-valued functions one easily checks that \( \bar{C} : H \to H \) defined by Eq. (1.22) is linear and moreover by Eq. (1.23) we have

\[ \| \bar{C}v \| \leq \int_X \| C(x)v \| \, d\mu (x) \leq \| C \|_1 \| v \| \]

which implies \( \| \bar{C} \| \leq \| C \|_1 . \)

**Notation 1.47 (Weak Integrals)** We denote the \( \bar{C} \) in Theorem 1.46 by either \( \mu (C) \) or \( \int_X C(x) \, d\mu (x) \).

**Theorem 1.48.** Let \( C \in L^1(\mu : B(H)) \). The weak integral, \( \mu (C) \), has the following properties:

1. \( \| \mu (C) \|_\text{op} \leq \| C \|_1 . \)
2. For all \( v, w \in H \),

\[ \langle \mu (C)v, w \rangle = \left\langle \int_X C(x) \, d\mu (x), v \right\rangle = \int_X \langle C(x)v, w \rangle \, d\mu (x) . \]
3. \( \mu(C^*) = \mu(C)^* \), i.e.
\[
\int_X C(x)^* \, d\mu(x) = \left( \int_X C(x) \, d\mu(x) \right)^* .
\]

4. If \( \{e_i\}_{i=1}^\infty \) is an orthonormal basis for \( H \), then
\[
\mu(C) v = \sum_{i=1}^\infty \left( \int_X (C(x) v, e_i) \, d\mu(x) \right) e_i \quad \forall \, v \in H .
\]
Proof. We leave the verifications of items 1., 2., and 4. to the reader.

Item 3. For \( v, w \in H \) we have,
\[
\langle \mu(C)^* v, w \rangle = (\mu(C) w, v) = \int_X (C(x) w, v) \, d\mu(x) = \int_X (v, C(x) w) \, d\mu(x) = \int_X \langle C^*(x) v, w \rangle\, d\mu(x) = \langle \mu(C^*) v, w \rangle .
\]

Item 5. First observe that for \( v, w \in H \),
\[
\langle C \otimes D (x, y) v, w \rangle = \langle C(x) D(y) v, w \rangle = \sum_{i=1}^\infty \langle D(y) v, e_i \rangle \langle C(x) e_i, w \rangle \quad (1.26)
\]
where \( \{e_i\}_{i=1}^\infty \) is an orthonormal basis for \( H \). From this relation it follows that \( C \otimes D \) is still weakly measurable. Since
\[
\int_{X \times Y} \|C \otimes D (x, y)\|_{L^1(\mu)} \, d\nu(y) = \int_{X \times Y} \|C(x) D(y)\|_{L^1(\mu)} \, d\nu(y) \leq \int_{X \times Y} \|C(x)\|_{L^1(\nu)} \|D(y)\|_{L^1(\mu)} \, d\nu(y) \|D\|_{L^1(\mu)} < \infty,
\]
we see \( C \otimes D \in L^1(\mu \otimes \nu : B(H)) \) and hence \( \mu \otimes \nu (C \otimes D) \) is well defined. So it only remains to verify the identity in Eq. (1.25). However, making use of Eq. (1.26) and the estimates,
\[
g(x, y) := \sum_{i=1}^\infty |\langle D(y) v, e_i \rangle| |\langle C(x) e_i, w \rangle| \\
\leq \sum_{i=1}^\infty |\langle D(y) v, e_i \rangle|^2 \sum_{i=1}^\infty |\langle C(x) e_i, w \rangle|^2 \\
= \sqrt{\|D(y)\|_{op} |\|C^*(x)\|_{op} \|v\| \|w\|} \\
= \|D(y)\|_{op} |\|C(x)\|_{op} \|v\| \|w\| ,
\]
it follows that \( g \in L^1(\mu \otimes \nu) \). Using this observations we may easily justify the following computation,
\[
\langle \mu \otimes \nu (C \otimes D) v, w \rangle = \int_{X \times Y} \, d\mu(x) \, d\nu(y) \langle C(x) D(y) v, w \rangle \\
= \int_{X \times Y} \, d\mu(x) \, d\nu(y) \sum_{i=1}^\infty \langle D(y) v, e_i \rangle \langle C(x) e_i, w \rangle \\
= \sum_{i=1}^\infty \int_{X \times Y} \, d\mu(x) \, d\nu(y) \langle D(y) v, e_i \rangle \langle C(x) e_i, w \rangle \\
= \sum_{i=1}^\infty \langle \nu(D) v, e_i \rangle \langle \mu(C) e_i, w \rangle = \langle \mu(C) \nu(D) v, w \rangle .
\]

Item 6. By the definition of \( \mu(C) \) and \( \nu(D) \),
\[
\langle \mu(C) v, \nu(D) w \rangle = \int_X \, d\mu(x) \langle C(x) v, \nu(D) w \rangle \\
= \int_X \, d\mu(x) \int_Y \, d\nu(y) \langle C(x) v, D(y) w \rangle .
\]

Exercise 1.6. Let us continue to use the notation in Theorem 1.48. If \( B \in B(H) \) is a linear operator such that \( \|C(x) , B \| = 0 \) for \( \mu \) - a.e. \( x \), show \( \|\mu(C), B\| = 0 \).
Basics of Banach and $C^*$-Algebras
In this part, we will only begin to scratch the surface on the topic of Banach algebras. For an encyclopedic view of the subject, the reader is referred to Palmer [43][44]. For general Banach and $C^*$-algebra stuff have a look at [40][80]. Also see the lecture notes in [49][79]. Putnam’s file looked quite good. For a very detailed statements see [12] See bottom of p. 45]
Banach Algebras and Linear ODE

2.1 Basic Definitions, Examples, and Properties

Definition 2.1. An associative algebra over a field is a vector space over with a bilinear, associative multiplication: i.e.,

\[(ab)c = a(bc)\]
\[a(b + c) = ab + ac\]
\[(a + b)c = ac + bc\]
\[a(\lambda c) = (\lambda a)c = \lambda(ac)\].

As usual, from now on we assume that \(F\) is either \(\mathbb{R}\) or \(\mathbb{C}\). Later in this chapter we will restrict to the complex case.

Definition 2.2. A Banach Algebra, \(\mathcal{A}\), is an \(F\)-Banach space which is an associative algebra over \(F\) satisfying,

\[\|ab\| \leq \|a\|\|b\| \quad \forall \ a, b \in \mathcal{A}\]  

[It is typically the case that if \(\mathcal{A}\) has a unit element, \(\mathbf{1}\), then \(\|\mathbf{1}\| = 1\). I will bake this into the definition!]

Exercise 2.1 (The unital correction). Let \(\mathcal{A}\) be a Banach algebra with a unit, \(\mathbf{1}\), with \(\mathbf{1} \neq 0\). Suppose that we do not assume \(\|\mathbf{1}\| = 1\). Show:

1. \(\|\mathbf{1}\| \geq 1\).
2. For \(a \in \mathcal{A}\), let \(L_a \in B(\mathcal{A})\) be left multiplication by \(a\), i.e. \(L_a x = ax\) for all \(x \in \mathcal{A}\). Now define \(\|a\| = \|L_a\| \in B(\mathcal{A}) = \sup \{\|ax\| : x \in \mathcal{A} \text{ with } \|x\| = 1\}\). Show

\[\frac{1}{c} \|a\| \leq |a| \leq \|a\| \quad \text{for all } a \in \mathcal{A},\]

\(|\mathbf{1}| = 1\) and \((\mathcal{A}, |\cdot|)\) is again a Banach algebra.

Examples 2.3 Here are some examples of Banach algebras. The first example is the prototype for the definition.

1. Suppose that \(X\) is a Banach space, \(B(X)\) denote the collection of bounded operators on \(X\). Then \(B(X)\) is a Banach algebra in operator norm with identity. \(B(X)\) is not commutative if \(\dim X > 1\).
2. Let \(X\) be a topological space, \(BC(X, \mathbb{F})\) be the bounded \(\mathbb{F}\)-valued, continuous functions on \(X\), with \(\|f\| = \sup_{x \in X} |f(x)|\). \(BC(X, \mathbb{F})\) is a commutative Banach algebra under pointwise multiplication. The constant function \(\mathbf{1}\) is an identity element.
3. If we assume that \(X\) is a locally compact Hausdorff space, then \(C_0(X, \mathbb{F})\) – the space of continuous \(\mathbb{F}\)–valued functions on \(X\) vanishing at infinity is a Banach sub-algebra of \(BC(X, \mathbb{F})\). If \(X\) is non-compact, then \(BC(X, \mathbb{F})\) is a Banach algebra without unit.
4. If \((\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mu)\) is a measure space then \(L^\infty(\mu) := L^\infty(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mu : \mathbb{C})\) is a commutative complex Banach algebra with identity. In this case \(\|f\| = \|f\|_{L^\infty(\mu)}\) is the essential supremum of \(|f|\) defined by

\[\|f\|_{L^\infty(\mu)} = \inf \{M > 0 : |f| \leq M \ \mu\text{-a.e.}\}\]  

5. \(\mathcal{A} = L^1(\mathbb{R}^1)\) with multiplication being convolution is a commutative Banach algebra without identity.
6. If \(\mathcal{A} = \ell^1(\mathbb{Z})\) with multiplication given by convolution is a commutative Banach algebra with identity which is this case is the function

\[\delta_0(n) := \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } n = 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } n \neq 0 \end{cases} \]  

This example is generalized and expanded on in the next proposition.

Proposition 2.4 (Group Algebra). Let \(G\) be a discrete group (i.e. finite or countable), \(\mathcal{A} := \ell^1(G)\), and for \(g \in G\) let \(\delta_g \in \mathcal{A}\) be defined by

\[\delta_g(x) := \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x = g \\ 0 & \text{if } x \neq g \end{cases} \]  

Then there exists a unique multiplication \((\cdot)\) on \(\mathcal{A}\) which makes \(\mathcal{A}\) into a Banach algebra with unit such that \(\delta_g \circ \delta_k = \delta_{gk}\) for all \(g, k \in G\) which is given by

\[(u \circ v)(x) = \sum_{g \in G} u(g) v(g^{-1} x) = \sum_{k \in G} u(xk^{-1}) v(k)\]  

(2.1)

[The unit in \(\mathcal{A}\) is \(\delta_e\) where \(e\) is the identity element of \(G\).]
Define \( \Delta x \). This leads us to define \( \Delta y \).

Proposition 2.6. Let \( A \) be a (complex) Banach algebra without identity. Let \( B = \{ (a, \alpha) : a \in A, \alpha \in \mathbb{C} \} = A \oplus \mathbb{C} \).

Define \( (a, \alpha)(b, \beta) = (ab + \alpha b + \beta a, \alpha \beta) \) and

\[ \|(a, \alpha)\| = \|a\| + |\alpha|. \quad (2.2) \]

Then \( B \) is a Banach algebra with identity \( e = (0,1) \), and the map \( a \to (a,0) \) is an isometric isomorphism onto a closed two sided ideal in \( B \).

Proof. Straightforward.

Remark 2.7. If \( A \) is a \( C^* \)-algebra as in Definition 2.50 below it is better to defined the norm on \( B \) by

\[ \| (a, \alpha) \| = \sup \{ |ab + \alpha b| : b \in A \text{ with } |b| \leq 1 \} \quad (2.3) \]

rather than Eq. (2.2). The above definition is motivated by the fact that \( a \in A \mapsto L_a \in B(A) \) is an isometry, where \( L_a b = ab \) for all \( a, b \in A \). Indeed, \( \|L_a b\| = \|ab\| \leq \|a\| \|b\| \) with equality when \( b = a^* \) so that \( \|L_a\|_{B(A)} = \|a\| \). The definition in Eq. (2.3) has been crafted so that

\[ \| (a, \alpha) \| = \|L_a + \alpha I\|_{B(A)} \]

which shows \( \| (a, \alpha) \| \) is a norm and \( a \in A \mapsto (a,0) \in B \mapsto B(A) \) are all isometric embeddings.

The advantage of this choice of norm is that \( B \) is still a \( C^* \)-algebra. Indeed

\[ \|ab + \alpha b\| = \|b^*a^* + \bar{\alpha}b^*\| = \| (b^*a^* + \bar{\alpha}b^*) \| (ab + \alpha b) \|
\]

\[ = \| b^*a^* + \bar{\alpha}b^*ab + \alpha b^*b + |\alpha|^2 b^| \|
\]

\[ \leq \| b^* \| (a^*a + \bar{\alpha}a + a^*\alpha) b + |\alpha|^2 b^| \|
\]

and so taking the sup of this expression over \( \|b\| \leq 1 \) implies

\[ \| (a, \alpha) \|^2 \leq \left( \| a^*a + \bar{\alpha}a + a^*\alpha, |\alpha|^2 \| \right) = \|(a, \alpha)^*(a, \alpha)\| \leq \| (a, \alpha)^* \| \| (a, \alpha) \| . \quad (2.4) \]

Eq. (2.4) implies \( \| (a, \alpha) \| \leq \| (a, \alpha)^* \| \) and by symmetry \( \| (a, \alpha)^* \| \leq \| (a, \alpha) \| \). Thus the inequalities in Eq. (2.4) are equalities and this shows \( \|(a, \alpha)\|^2 = \| (a, \alpha)^*(a, \alpha)\| \). Moreover \( A \) is still embedded in \( B \) isometrically. because for \( a \in A \),

\[ \|a\| = \left| a \frac{a^*}{\|a\|} \right| \leq \sup \{ \|ab\| : b \in A \text{ with } \|b\| \leq 1 \} \leq \|a\| \]

which combined with Eq. (2.3) implies \( \|(a,0)\| = \|a\| \).

Definition 2.8. Let \( A \) be a Banach algebra with identity, 1. If \( a \in A \), then \( a \) is right (left) invertible if there exists \( b \in A \) such that \( ab = 1 \) (\( ba = 1 \)) in which case we call \( b \) a right (left) inverse of \( a \). The element \( a \) is called invertible if it has both a left and a right inverse.

Note if \( ab = 1 \) and \( ca = 1 \), then \( c = cab = b \). Therefore if \( a \) has left and right inverses then they are equal and such inverses are unique. When \( a \) is invertible, we will write \( a^{-1} \) for the unique left and right inverse of \( a \). The next lemma shows that notion of inverse given here is consistent with the notion of algebraic inverses when \( A = B(X) \) for some Banach space \( X \).
Lemma 2.9 (Inverse Mapping Theorem). If $X, Y$ are Banach spaces and $T \in L(X,Y)$ is invertible (i.e. a bijective linear transformation) then the inverse map, $T^{-1}$, is bounded, i.e. $T^{-1} \in B(Y,X)$. (Note that $T^{-1}$ is automatically linear.) In other words algebraic invertibility implies topological invertibility.

**Proof.** If $T$ is surjective, we know by the open mapping theorem that $T$ is an open mapping and form this it follows that the algebraic inverse of $T$ is continuous. □

**Corollary 2.10 (Closed ranges).** Let $X$ and $Y$ be Banach spaces and $T \in L(X,Y)$. Then $\text{Nul}(T) = \{0\}$ and $\text{Ran}(T)$ is closed in $Y$ iff

$$\varepsilon := \inf_{\|x\|_X = 1} \|Tx\|_Y > 0. \quad (2.5)$$

**Proof.** If $\text{Nul}(T) = \{0\}$ and $\text{Ran}(T)$ is closed then $T$ thought of an operator in $B(X,\text{Ran}(T))$ is an invertible map with inverse denoted by $S : \text{Ran}(T) \to X$. Since $\text{Ran}(T)$ is a closed subspace of a Banach space it is itself a Banach space and so by Corollary 2.9 we know that $S$ is a bounded operator, i.e.

$$\|Sy\|_X \leq \|S\|_{op} \cdot \|y\|_Y \quad \forall \ y \in \text{Ran}(T).$$

Taking $y = Tx$ in the above inequality shows,

$$\|x\|_X \leq \|S\|_{op} \cdot \|Tx\|_Y \quad \forall \ x \in X$$

from which we learn $\varepsilon = \|S\|_{op}^{-1} > 0$.

Conversely if $\varepsilon > 0$ (as in Eq. (2.5)), then by scaling, it follows that

$$\|Tx\|_Y \geq \varepsilon \|x\|_X \quad \forall \ x \in X.$$

This last inequality clearly implies $\text{Nul}(T) = \{0\}$. Moreover if $\{x_n\} \subset X$ is a sequence such that $y := \lim_{n \to \infty} Tx_n$ exists in $Y$, then

$$\|x_n - x_m\| \leq \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \|T(x_n - x_m)\|_Y = \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \|Tx_n - Tx_m\|_Y$$

$$\to \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \|y - y\|_Y = 0 \text{ as } m, n \to \infty.$$

Therefore $x := \lim_{n \to \infty} x_n$ exists in $X$ and $y = \lim_{n \to \infty} Tx_n = Tx$ which shows $\text{Ran}(T)$ is closed. □

**Example 2.11.** Let $X = \ell^1(N_0)$ and $T : X \to C([0,1])$ be defined by $T a = \sum_{n=0}^\infty a_n x^n$. Now let $Y := \text{Ran}(T)$ so that $T : X \to Y$ is bijective. The inverse map is again not bounded. For example consider $a = (1, -1, 1, -1, \ldots, \pm 1, 0, 0, 0, \ldots)$ so that

$$Ta = \sum_{k=0}^n (-x)^k = \frac{(-x)^{n+1} - 1}{-x - 1} = \frac{1 + (-1)^n x^{n+1}}{1 + x}.$$

We then have $\|Ta\|_\infty \leq 2$ while $\|a\|_X = n + 1$. Thus $\|T^{-1}\|_{op} = \infty$. This shows that range space in the open mapping theorem must be complete as well.

The next elementary proposition shows how to use geometric series in order to construct inverses.

**Proposition 2.12.** Let $A$ be a Banach algebra with identity and $a \in A$. If $\sum_{n=0}^\infty \|a^n\| < \infty$ then $1 - a$ is invertible and

$$\|(1 - a)^{-1}\| \leq \sum_{n=0}^\infty \|a^n\|.$$

In particular, if $\|a\| < 1$, then $1 - a$ is invertible and

$$\|(1 - a)^{-1}\| \leq \frac{1}{1 - \|a\|}.$$

**Proof.** Let $b = \sum_{n=0}^\infty a^n$ which, by assumption, is absolutely convergent and so satisfies, $\|b\| \leq \sum_{n=0}^\infty \|a^n\|$. It is easy to verify that $(1 - a)b = b(1 - a) = 1$ which implies $(1 - a)^{-1} = b$ which proves the first assertion. Then second assertion now follows from the first and the simple estimates, $\|a^n\| \leq \|a\|^n$, and geometric series identity, $\sum_{n=0}^\infty \|a^n\| = 1/(1 - \|a\|)$.

**Notation 2.13.** Let $A_{inv}$ denote the invertible elements for $A$ and by convention we write $\lambda$ instead of $\lambda 1$.

**Remark 2.14.** The invertible elements, $A_{inv}$, form a multiplicative system, i.e. if $a, b \in A_{inv}$, then $ab \in A_{inv}$. As usual we have $(ab)^{-1} = b^{-1}a^{-1}$ as is easily verified.

**Corollary 2.15.** If $x \in A_{inv}$ and $h \in A$ satisfy $\|x^{-1}h\| < 1$, show $x + h \in A_{inv}$ and

$$\|(x + h)^{-1}\| \leq \|x^{-1}\| \cdot \frac{1}{1 - \|x^{-1}h\|}. \quad (2.6)$$

In particular this shows $A_{inv}$ of invertible is an open subset of $A$. We further have

$$(x + h)^{-1} = \sum_{n=0}^\infty (-1)^n x^{-1} h^n x^{-1}$$

$$= x^{-1} - x^{-1}hx^{-1} + x^{-1}hx^{-1}hx^{-1} - x^{-1}hx^{-1}hx^{-1}hx^{-1} + \ldots$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^N (-1)^n (x^{-1}h)^n x^{-1} + R_N$$

where $R_N = \sum_{n=N+1}^\infty (-1)^n (x^{-1}h)^n x^{-1}$.
where
\[ \|R_N\| \leq \big\| (x^{-1}h)^{N+1} \big\| \|x^{-1}\| \frac{1}{1 - \|x^{-1}h\|}. \]

**Proof.** By the assumptions and Proposition 2.12 both \( x \) and \( 1 + x^{-1}h \) are invertible with
\[ \|1 + x^{-1}h\| \leq \frac{1}{1 - \|x^{-1}h\|}. \]
As \( x + h = x (1 + x^{-1}h) \), it follows that \( x + h \) is invertible and
\[ (x + h)^{-1} = (1 + x^{-1}h)^{-1} x^{-1}. \]
Taking norms of this equation then gives the estimate in Eq. (2.6). The series expansion now follows from the previous equation and the geometric series representation in Proposition 2.12. Lastly the remainder estimate is easily obtained as follows;
\[
R_N = \sum_{n>N} (-x^{-1}h)^n x^{-1} = (-x^{-1}h)^{N+1} \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-x^{-1}h)^n \right] x^{-1} = (-x^{-1}h)^{N+1} (1 + x^{-1}h)^{-1} x^{-1}
\]
so that
\[
\|R_N\| \leq \|x^{-1}\| \big\| (1 + x^{-1}h)^{-1} \big\| \big\| (x^{-1}h)^{N+1} \big\|
\leq \big\| (x^{-1}h)^{N+1} \big\| \|x^{-1}\| \frac{1}{1 - \|x^{-1}h\|}.
\]

In the sequel the following simple identity is often useful; if \( b, c \in A_{\text{inv}} \), then
\[ b^{-1} - c^{-1} = b^{-1} (c - b) c^{-1}. \] (2.7)
This identity is the non-commutative form of adding fractions by using a common denominator. Here is a simple (redundant in light of Corollary 2.15) application.

**Corollary 2.16.** The map \( A_{\text{inv}} \ni x \rightarrow x^{-1} \in A_{\text{inv}} \) is continuous. ([This map is in fact \( C^\infty \), see Exercise 2.2 below.])

**Proof.** Suppose that \( x \in A_{\text{inv}} \) and \( h \in A \) is sufficiently small so that \( \|x^{-1}h\| \leq \|x^{-1}\| \|h\| < 1 \). Then \( x + h \) is invertible by Corollary 2.15 and we find the identity,
\[ (x + h)^{-1} - x^{-1} = (x + h)^{-1} (x - (x + h)) x^{-1} = - (x + h)^{-1} h x^{-1}. \] (2.8)
From Eq. (2.8) and Corollary 2.15 it follows that
\[ \|(x + h)^{-1} - x^{-1}\| \leq \|x^{-1}\| \|(x + h)^{-1}\| \|h\| \leq \|x^{-1}\|^2 \frac{\|h\|}{1 - \|x^{-1}h\|} \to 0 \text{ as } h \to 0. \]

### 2.2 Calculus in Banach Algebras

**Exercise 2.2.** Show that the inversion map \( f : A_{\text{inv}} \to A_{\text{inv}} \subset A \) defined by \( f(x) = x^{-1} \) is differentiable with
\[ f'(x) h = (\partial_h f)(x) = -x^{-1} hx^{-1} \]
for all \( x \in A_{\text{inv}} \) and \( h \in A \). Hint: iterate the identity
\[ (x + h)^{-1} = x^{-1} - (x + h)^{-1} hx^{-1} \]
that was derived in the lecture notes. [Again this exercise is somewhat redundant in light of light of Corollary 2.15]

**Exercise 2.3.** Suppose that \( a \in A \) and \( t \in \mathbb{R} \) (or \( \mathbb{C} \) if \( A \) is a complex Banach algebra). Show directly that:
1. \( e^{ta} := \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!} a^n \) is an absolutely convergent series and \( \|e^{ta}\| \leq e^{\|t\| \|a\|} \).
2. \( e^{ta} \) is differentiable in \( t \) and that \( \frac{d}{dt} e^{ta} = ae^{ta} = e^{ta}a \). [Suggestion: you could prove this by scratch or make use of Exercise 1.2]

**Corollary 2.17.** For \( a, b \in A \) commute, i.e. \( ab = ba \), then \( e^{a} e^{b} = e^{a+b} = e^{b} e^{a} \).

**Proof.** In the proof to follow, we will use \( e^{ta} b = be^{ta} \) for all \( t \in \mathbb{R} \). [Proof is left to the reader.] Let \( f(t) := e^{-t} a e^{t(a+b)} \), then by the product rule,
\[
\dot{f}(t) = -e^{-t} a e^{t(a+b)} + e^{-t} (a+b) e^{t(a+b)} = -e^{-t} a e^{t(a+b)} = be^{-t} a e^{t(a+b)} = b f(t).
\]
Therefore, \( \frac{d}{dt} \left[ e^{-tb} f(t) \right] = 0 \) and hence \( e^{-tb} f(t) = e^{-tb} f(0) = 1. \) Altogether we have shown,
\[
e^{-tb} e^{-ta} e^{t(a+b)} = e^{-tb} f(t) = 1.\]
Taking \( t = \pm 1 \) and \( b = 0 \) in this identity shows \( e^{-a} e^{a} = 1 = e^{a} e^{-a} \), i.e. \( (e^a)^{-1} = e^{-a} \). Knowing this fact it then follows from the previously displayed equation that \( e^{t(a+b)} = e^{ta} e^{tb} \) which at \( t = 1 \) gives, \( e^a e^b = e^{a+b} \). Interchanging the roles of \( a \) and \( b \) then completes the proof.
Corollary 2.18. Suppose that $A \in \mathcal{A}$, then the solution to
\[ y\left(t\right) = Ay\left(t\right) \] with $y\left(0\right) = 1$
is given by $y\left(t\right) = e^{tA}$ where
\[ e^{tA} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!} A^n. \] (2.10)
Moreover,
\[ e^{\left(t+s\right)A} = e^{tA} e^{sA} \] for all $s, t \in \mathbb{R}$. (2.11)

Proposition 2.21. If $a, b \in \mathcal{A}$, then
\[ e^a b e^{-a} = e^{ad_a} \left(b\right) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} ad_a^n b. \]
where $ad_a$ is computed by working in the Banach algebra, $B\left(\mathcal{A}\right)$.

Proof. Let \[ f\left(t\right) := e^{t\left(a\right) - t^2 b}, \] then
\[ \dot{f}\left(t\right) = ace^{t\left(a\right) - t^2 b} - e^{t\left(a\right) - t^2 b} a = ad \left(f\left(t\right)\right) \] with $f\left(0\right) = b$.

Thus it follows that
\[ \frac{d}{dt} \left[e^{-t \cdot ad_a} f\left(t\right)\right] = 0 \implies e^{-t \cdot ad_a} f\left(t\right) = e^{-0 \cdot ad_a} f\left(0\right) = b. \]

From this we conclude,
\[ e^{t \cdot ad_a} f\left(t\right) = f\left(t\right) = e^{t \cdot ad_a} \left(b\right). \]

Corollary 2.22. Let $a, b \in \mathcal{A}$ and suppose that $\left[a, b\right] := ab - ba$ commutes with both $a$ and $b$. Then
\[ e^a b = e^{a + b + \frac{1}{2} \left[a, b\right]} \]

Proof. Let $u\left(t\right) := e^{t a} e^{t b}$ and then compute,
\[ \dot{u}\left(t\right) = ae^{t a} e^{t b} + e^{t a} be^{t b} = ae^{t a} e^{t b} + e^{t a} be^{-t a} e^{t a} e^{t b} = \left[a + e^{t \cdot ad_a} \left(b\right)\right] u\left(t\right) = c\left(t\right) u\left(t\right) \] with $u\left(0\right) = 1$, (2.12)
where
\[ c\left(t\right) = a + e^{t \cdot ad_a} \left(b\right) = a + b + t \left[a, b\right] \]
because
\[ ad_a^2 b = \left[a, \left[a, b\right]\right] = 0 \] by assumption.

Furthermore, our assumptions imply for all $s, t \in \mathbb{R}$ that
\[ c\left(t\right), c\left(s\right) = \left[a + b + t \left[a, b\right], a + b + s \left[a, b\right]\right] = \left[t \left[a, b\right], a + b + s \left[a, b\right]\right] = st \left[[a, b], [a, b]\right] = 0. \]

Therefore the solution to Eq. (2.12) is given by
\[ u\left(t\right) = e^{\int_0^t c\left(r\right) dr} = e^{t\left(a + b\right) + \frac{1}{2} t^2 \left[a, b\right]} \]
Taking $t = 1$ complete the proof.
Remark 2.23 (Baker-Campbell-Dynkin-Hausdorff formula). In general the Baker-Campbell-Dynkin-Hausdorff formula states there is a function \( \Gamma (a, b) \in A \) defined for \( \|a\|_A + \|b\|_A \) sufficiently small such that

\[
e^a e^b = e^{\Gamma (a, b)}
\]

where all of the higher order terms are linear combinations of terms of the form

\[
a \in A dx_1 \ldots ad_{x_n} x_0 \text{ with } x_i \in \{a, b\} \text{ for } 0 \leq i \leq n \text{ and } n \geq 3.
\]

Exercise 2.7. Suppose that \( a, s, t \in A \) is a \( C^2 \)-function \( (s, t) \) near \( (s_0, t_0) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \), show \( (s, t) \to e^{a(s, t)} \in A \) is still \( C^2 \). Hints:

1. Let \( f_n (s, t) := \frac{a(s, t)^n}{n!} \) and then verify

\[
\left\| \dot{f}_n \right\| \leq \frac{1}{(n-1)!} \left\| a \right\|^{n-1} \left\| \dot{a} \right\|,
\]

\[
\left\| f'_n \right\| \leq \frac{1}{(n-1)!} \left\| a \right\|^{n-1} \left\| a' \right\|,
\]

\[
\left\| \ddot{f}_n \right\| \leq \frac{1}{(n-2)!} \left\| a \right\|^{n-2} \left\| \dot{a} \right\|^2 + \frac{1}{(n-1)!} \left\| a \right\|^{n-1} \left\| \ddot{a} \right\|,
\]

\[
\left\| f''_n \right\| \leq \frac{1}{(n-2)!} \left\| a \right\|^{n-2} \left\| a' \right\|^2 + \frac{1}{(n-1)!} \left\| a \right\|^{n-1} \left\| a'' \right\|
\]

where \( \dot{f} := \frac{df}{dt} \) and \( f' := \frac{d}{dt} f \).

2. Use the above estimates along with repeated applications of Exercise 1.2 in order to conclude that \( f (s, t) = e^{a(s, t)} \) is \( C^2 \) near \( (s_0, t_0) \).

Theorem 2.24 (Differential of \( e^a \)). For any \( a, b \in A \),

\[
\partial_t e^a := \frac{d}{ds} \big|_0 e^{a+s} = e^a \int_0^1 e^{-ta} be^{ta} dt.
\]

Proof. The function, \( u (s, t) := e^{t(a+s)} \) is \( C^2 \) by Exercise 2.7 and therefore we find,

\[
\frac{d}{dt} u_s (0, t) = \frac{\partial}{\partial s} \big|_0 \dot{u} (s, t) = \frac{\partial}{\partial s} \big|_0 [(a + sb) u (s, t)]
\]

\[
= bu (s, t) + au_s (0, t) \text{ with } u_s (0, 0) = 0.
\]

To solve this equation we consider,

\[
\frac{d}{dt} [e^{-ta} u_s (0, t)] = e^{-ta} bu (0, t) = e^{-ta} be^{ta}
\]

which upon integration,

\[
e^{-a} \left[ \partial_t e^a \right] = e^{-a} u_s (0, 1) = \int_0^1 e^{-ta} be^{ta} dt
\]

and hence

\[
\partial_t e^a = e^a \int_0^1 e^{-ta} be^{ta} dt.
\]

Corollary 2.25. The map \( a \to e^a \) is differentiable. More precisely,

\[
\left\| e^{a+b} - e^a - \partial_t e^a \right\| = O \left( \left\| b \right\|^2 \right).
\]

Proof. From Theorem 2.24,

\[
\frac{d}{ds} e^{a+b} = \frac{d}{ds} \big|_0 e^{a+s+b} = e^{a+b} \int_0^1 e^{-t(a+s+b)} be^{t(a+s+b)} dt
\]

and therefore,

\[
e^{a+b} - e^a - \partial_t e^a = \int_0^1 ds e^{a+b} \int_0^1 dt e^{-t(a+s+b)} be^{t(a+s+b)} - e^a \int_0^1 e^{-t(a+s)} be^{t(a+s)} dt
\]

\[
= \int_0^1 ds \int_0^1 dt \left[ e^{(1-t)(a+s+b)} be^{t(a+s+b)} - e^{(1-t)a} be^{ta} \right]
\]

and so

\[
\left\| e^{a+b} - e^a - \partial_t e^a \right\| \leq \int_0^1 ds \int_0^1 dt \left\| e^{(1-t)(a+s+b)} be^{t(a+s+b)} - e^{(1-t)a} be^{ta} \right\|
\]

To estimate right side, let

\[
g (s, t) := e^{(1-t)(a+s+b)} be^{t(a+s+b)} - e^{(1-t)a} be^{ta}.
\]

Then by Theorem 2.24

\[
\left\| g' (s, t) \right\| = \left\| \frac{d}{ds} \left[ e^{(1-t)(a+s+b)} be^{t(a+s+b)} \right] \right\| \leq C \left\| b \right\|^2
\]

and since \( g (0, t) = 0 \), we conclude that \( \left\| g (s, t) \right\| \leq C \left\| b \right\|^2 \). Hence it follows that

\[
\left\| e^{a+b} - e^a - \partial_t e^a \right\| = O \left( \left\| b \right\|^2 \right).
\]
2.3 General Linear ODE in $\mathcal{A}$

There is a bit of change of notation in this section as we use both capital and lower case letters for possible elements of $\mathcal{A}$. Let us now work with more general linear differential equations on $\mathcal{A}$ where again $\mathcal{A}$ is a Banach algebra with identity. Further let $J = (a, b) \subset \mathbb{R}$ be an open interval. Further suppose that $h, A \in C(J, \mathcal{A}), s \in J$, and $x \in \mathcal{A}$ are given then we wish to solve the ordinary differential equation,

$$\dot{y}(t) = A(t)y(t) + h(t) \quad \text{with} \quad y(s) = x \in \mathcal{A}, \quad (2.13)$$

for a function, $y \in C^1(J, \mathcal{A})$. This equation may be written in its equivalent (as the reader should verify) integral form, namely we are looking for $y \in C(J, \mathcal{A})$ such that

$$y(t) = \int_s^t A(\tau) y(\tau) d\tau + x + \int_s^t h(\tau) d\tau. \quad (2.14)$$

**Notation 2.26** For $\varphi \in C(J, \mathcal{A})$, let $\|\varphi\|_\infty := \max_{t \in J} \|\varphi(t)\| \in [0, \infty]$. We further let

$$BC(J, \mathcal{A}) := \{\varphi \in C(J, \mathcal{A}) : \|\varphi\|_\infty < \infty\}$$

denote the bounded functions in $C(J, \mathcal{A})$.

The reader should verify that $BC(J, \mathcal{A})$ with $\|\cdot\|_\infty$ is again a Banach algebra. If we let

$$(A_s y)(t) = (A^s y)(t) := \int_s^t A(\tau) y(\tau) d\tau \quad \text{and} \quad \varphi(t) := x + \int_s^t h(\tau) d\tau \quad (2.15)$$

then these equations may be written as

$$y = A_s y + \varphi \iff (\mathcal{I} - A_s) y = \varphi.$$ 

Thus we see these equations will have a unique solution provided $(\mathcal{I} - A_s)^{-1}$ is invertible. To simplify the exposition without real loss of generality we are going to now assume

$$\|A\|_1 := \int_J \|A(\tau)\| \, d\tau < \infty. \quad (2.16)$$

The point of this assumption if $A_s$ is defined as in Eq. (2.15), then for $y \in BC(J, \mathcal{A})$ and $t \in J,$

$$\|A y(t)\| \leq \int_0^t \|A(\tau) y(\tau)\| \, d\tau \leq \int_0^t \|A(\tau)\| \, d\tau \cdot \|y\|_\infty \leq \int_J \|A(\tau)\| \, d\tau \cdot \|y\|_\infty. \quad (2.17)$$

This inequality then immediately implies $A_s : BC(J, \mathcal{A}) \to BC(J, \mathcal{A})$ is a bounded operator with $\|A_s\|_{op} \leq \|A\|_1.$ In fact we will see below in Corollary 2.29 that more generally we have

$$\|A^n s\|_{op} \leq \frac{1}{n!} (\|A\|_1)^n$$

which is the key to showing $(\mathcal{I} - A_s)^{-1}$ is invertible.

**Lemma 2.27.** For all $n \in \mathbb{N},$

$$(A^n_s \varphi)(t) = \int_s^t d\tau_n \int_s^{\tau_n} d\tau_{n-1} \cdots \int_s^{\tau_2} d\tau_1 A(\tau_n) \cdots A(\tau_1) \varphi(\tau_1).$$

**Proof.** The proof is by induction with the induction step being,

$$(A^{n+1}_s \varphi)(t) = (A^n_s A_s \varphi)(t)$$


$$= \int_s^t d\tau_n \int_s^{\tau_n} d\tau_{n-1} \cdots \int_s^{\tau_2} d\tau_1 A(\tau_n) \cdots A(\tau_1) (A_s \varphi)(\tau_1)$$

$$= \int_s^t d\tau_n \int_s^{\tau_n} d\tau_{n-1} \cdots \int_s^{\tau_2} d\tau_1 A(\tau_n) \cdots A(\tau_1) \int_s^{\tau_1} A(\tau_0) \varphi(\tau_0) \, d\tau_0$$

$$= \int_s^t d\tau_n \int_s^{\tau_n} d\tau_{n-1} \cdots \int_s^{\tau_2} d\tau_1 A(\tau_n) \cdots A(\tau_1) A(\tau_0) \varphi(\tau_0).$$

\[\blacksquare\]

**Lemma 2.28.** Suppose that $\psi \in C(J, \mathbb{R})$, then

$$\int_s^t d\tau_n \int_s^{\tau_n} d\tau_{n-1} \cdots \int_s^{\tau_2} d\tau_1 \psi(\tau_n) \cdots \psi(\tau_1) = \frac{1}{n!} \left(\int_s^t \psi(\tau) \, d\tau\right)^n. \quad (2.18)$$

**Proof.** The proof will go by induction on $n$ with $n = 1$ assertion obviously being true. Now let $\Psi(t) := \int_s^t \psi(\tau) \, d\tau$ so that the right side of Eq. (2.18) is $\Psi(t)^n / n!$ and $\Psi(t) = \psi(t)$. We now complete the induction step;

$$\int_s^t \int_s^{\tau_n} \int_s^{\tau_{n-1}} \cdots \int_s^{\tau_2} \psi(\tau_n) \cdots \psi(\tau_0) \, d\tau_0 \psi(\tau_n) \cdots \psi(\tau_0)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n!} \int_s^t \int_s^{\tau_n} \psi(\tau_n) \left[\Psi(\tau_n)\right]^n \, d\tau_0 \Psi(\tau_n) \psi(\tau_n)$$

$$= \int_s^t \frac{1}{(n+1)!} \left[\Psi(\tau)\right]^{n+1} \bigg|_{\tau=s} = \frac{1}{(n+1)!} \left[\Psi(\tau)\right]^{n+1}. \quad \blacksquare$$
Corollary 2.29. For all \( n \in \mathbb{N} \),
\[
\|A^n\|_{op} \leq \frac{1}{n!} \|A\|^n = \frac{1}{n!} \left( \int_J \|A(\tau)\| \, d\tau \right)^n
\]
and therefore \((I - A_s)^{-1}\) is invertible with
\[
\left\| (I - A_s)^{-1} \right\|_{op} \leq \exp(\|A\|_1) = \exp \left( \int_J \|A(\tau)\| \, d\tau \right).
\]

Proof. This follows by the simple estimate along with Lemma 2.27 that for any \( t \in J \),
\[
\|A^n(\varphi)(t)\| \leq \left| \int_s^t \int_s^t \cdots \int_s^t \|A(\tau_n) \cdots A(\tau_1) \varphi(\tau_1)\| \right| \leq \|\varphi\|_\infty \leq \frac{1}{n!} \left( \int_J \|A(\tau)\| \, d\tau \right)^n \|\varphi\|_\infty.
\]
Taking the supremum over \( t \in J \) then shows
\[
\|A^n\varphi\|_\infty \leq \frac{1}{n!} \left( \int_J \|A(\tau)\| \, d\tau \right)^n \|\varphi\|_\infty
\]
which completes the proof. \( \blacksquare \)

Theorem 2.30. For all \( \varphi \in BC(J,A) \), there exists a unique solution, \( y \in BC(J,A) \), to \( y = A_s y + \varphi \) which is given by
\[
y(t) = \left( (I - A_s)^{-1} \varphi \right)(t) = \varphi(t) + \sum_{n=1}^\infty \int_s^t \cdots \int_s^t \|A(\tau_n) \cdots A(\tau_1) \varphi(\tau_1)\| \int_s^t \cdots \int_s^t \|A(\tau_n) \cdots A(\tau_1) \varphi(\tau_1)\| \, d\tau \, d\tau_n \cdots d\tau_1.
\]

Notation 2.31 For \( t \in J \), let \( u^A(t,s) = 1 \) and for \( n \in \mathbb{N} \) let
\[
u^A_n(t,s) := \int_s^t \cdots \int_s^t \|A(\tau_n) \cdots A(\tau_1)\| \, d\tau_n \cdots d\tau_1.
\]

Definition 2.32 (Fundamental Solutions). For \( t \in J \), let
\[
u^A(t,s) := \left( (I - A_s)^{-1} \right)(t) = \sum_{n=0}^\infty \nu^A_n(t,s)
\]
Equivalently \( u^A(t,s) \) is the unique solution to the ODE,
\[
\frac{d}{dt} u^A(t,s) = A(t) u^A(t,s) \quad \text{with} \quad u^A(s,s) = 1.
\]

Proposition 2.33 (Group Property). For all \( s, \sigma, t \in J \) we have
\[
u^A(t,s) u^A(s,\sigma) = \nu^A(t,\sigma).
\]

Proof. Both sides of Eq. (2.22) satisfy the same ODE, namely the ODE
\[
\dot{y}(t) = A(t) y(t) \quad \text{with} \quad y(s) = u^A(s,\sigma).
\]
The uniqueness of such solutions completes the proof. \( \blacksquare \)

Lemma 2.34 (A Fubini Result). Let \( s, t \in J \), \( n \in \mathbb{N} \) and \( f(\tau_n, \ldots, \tau_1, \tau_0) \) be a continuous function with values in \( A \), then
\[
\int_s^t \cdots \int_s^t \|A(\tau_n) \cdots A(\tau_1)\| \int_s^t d\tau_0 f(\tau_n, \ldots, \tau_1, \tau_0)
\]
\[
= \int_s^t \cdots \int_s^t \|A(\tau_n) \cdots A(\tau_1)\| \int_s^t \cdots \int_s^t \|A(\tau_n) \cdots A(\tau_1)\| d\tau_0 f(\tau_n, \ldots, \tau_1, \tau_0).
\]

Proof. We simply use Fubini’s theorem to change the order of integration while referring to Figure (2.1) in order to work out the correct limits of integration. \( \blacksquare \)

Fig. 2.1. This figures shows how to find the new limits of integration when \( t > s \) and \( t < s \) respectively.

Lemma 2.35. If \( n \in \mathbb{N}_0 \) and \( s, t \in J \), then in general,
\[
u^A_n+1(t,\sigma) = \int_s^t u^A_n(t,\sigma) A(\sigma) \varphi(\sigma) \, d\sigma.
\]

and if \( H(t) := \int_s^t h(\tau) \, d\tau \), then
\[
u^A_n(t) = \int_s^t u^A_n(t,\sigma) h(\sigma) \, d\sigma.
\]
**Proof.** Using Lemma 2.34 shows,

\[
(A^{n+1}_s \varphi) (t) = \int_s^t d \tau_0 \cdots \int_s^{\tau_2} d \tau_1 \int_s^{\tau_0} d \tau_0 A(\tau_0) \cdots A(\tau_1) A(\tau_0) \varphi(\tau_0)
\]

\[
= \int_s^t d \tau_0 \left[ \int_s^t d \tau_1 \int_s^{\tau_0} d \tau_0 A(\tau_0) \cdots A(\tau_1) \int_s^{\tau_0} d \tau_1 A(\tau_0) \cdots A(\tau_1) \right] h(\tau_0)
\]

\[
= \int_s^t u_n^A(t, \sigma) [A(\sigma) \varphi(\sigma)] d \sigma.
\]

Similarly,

\[
(A^n_s H) (t) = \int_s^t d \tau_0 \cdots \int_s^{\tau_2} d \tau_1 \int_s^{\tau_0} d \tau_0 A(\tau_0) \cdots A(\tau_1) \int_s^{\tau_0} d \tau_1 A(\tau_0) \cdots A(\tau_1) h(\tau_0)
\]

\[
= \int_s^t u_n^A(t, \sigma) h(\sigma) d \sigma.
\]

**Proposition 2.36 (Dual Equation).** The fundamental solution, \(u^A\) also satisfies

\[
u^A(t, s) = 1 + \int_s^t u^A(t, \sigma) A(\sigma) d \sigma
\]

which is equivalent to solving the ODE,

\[
\frac{d}{ds} u^A(t, s) = -u^A(t, s) A(s) \text{ with } u^A(t, t) = 1.
\]

**Proof.** Summing Eq. (2.23) on \(n\) shows,

\[
\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (A^{n+1}_s \varphi) (t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \int_s^t u_n^A(t, \sigma) A(\sigma) \varphi(\sigma) d \sigma
\]

\[
= \int_s^t \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} u_n^A(t, \sigma) A(\sigma) \varphi(\sigma) d \sigma
\]

\[
= \int_s^t u^A(t, \sigma) A(\sigma) \varphi(\sigma) d \sigma
\]

and hence

\[
\left( (I - A_s)^{-1} \varphi \right) (t) = \varphi(t) + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (A^{n+1}_s \varphi) (t)
\]

\[
= \varphi(t) + \int_s^t u^A(t, \sigma) A(\sigma) \varphi(\sigma) d \sigma
\]

which specializes to Eq. (2.25) when \(\varphi(t) = 1\). Differentiating Eq. (2.25) on \(s\) then gives Eq. (2.26). Another proof of Eq. (2.26) may be given using Proposition 2.33 to conclude that \(u(t, s) = u(s, t)^{-1}\) and then differentiating this equation shows

\[
\frac{d}{ds} u(t, s) = -u(s, t)^{-1} \frac{d}{ds} u(s, t) u(s, t)^{-1}
\]

\[
= -u(s, t)^{-1} A(s) u(s, t) u(s, t)^{-1} = -u(s, t)^{-1} A(s).
\]

**Theorem 2.37 (Duhamel’s principle).** The unique solution to Eq. (2.13) is

\[
y(t) = u^A(t, s) x + \int_s^t u^A(t, \sigma) h(\sigma) d \sigma.
\]

**Proof. First Proof.** Let

\[
\varphi(t) = x + H(t) \text{ with } H(t) = \int_s^t h(\tau) d \tau.
\]

Then we know that the unique solution to Eq. (2.13) is given by

\[
y = (I - A_s)^{-1} \varphi = (I - A_s)^{-1} x + (I - A_s)^{-1} H
\]

\[
= u^A(\cdot, s) x + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} A^n_s H,
\]

where by summing Eq. (2.24),

\[
\left( (I - A_s)^{-1} H \right) (t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (A^n_s H) (t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \int_s^t u_n^A(t, \sigma) h(\sigma) d \sigma
\]

\[
= \int_s^t \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} u_n^A(t, \sigma) h(\sigma) d \sigma = \int_s^t u^A(t, \sigma) h(\sigma) d \sigma
\]

and the proof is complete.

**Second Proof.** We need only verify that \(y\) defined by Eq. (2.28) satisfies Eq. (2.13). The main point is that the chain rule, FTC, and differentiation past the integral implies
Theorem 2.38. The map, $A \rightarrow u^A(t,s)$ is differentiable and moreover,

$$\partial_B u^A(t,s) = \int_s^t u^A(t,\sigma) B(\sigma) u^A(\sigma, s) d\sigma. \tag{2.30}$$

Proof. Since $\partial_B A_s^A = A_s^B$ and

$$u^A(\cdot, s) = (I - A_s^A)^{-1} 1$$

we conclude form Exercise 2.22 that

$$\partial_B u^A(\cdot, s) = (I - A_s^A)^{-1} A_s^B (I - A_s^A)^{-1} 1.$$

Equation (2.30) now follows from Eq. (2.29) with $h(\sigma) = B(\sigma) u^A(\sigma, s)$ so that

$$H(t) = \int_s^t B(\sigma) u^A(\sigma, s) d\sigma = \left( A_s^B (I - A_s^A)^{-1} 1 \right)(t).$$

Remark 2.39 (Constant coefficient case). When $A(t) = A$ is constant, then

$$u^A(t,s) = \int_s^t d\tau_n \int_s^\tau d\tau_{n-1} \cdots \int_s^\tau d\tau_1 A^n = \frac{(t-s)^n}{n!} A^n$$

and hence $u^A(t,s) = e^{(t-s)A}$. In this case Eqs. (2.28) (2.30) reduce to

$$y(t) = e^{(t-s)A} x + \int_s^t e^{(t-\sigma)A} h(\sigma) d\sigma,$$

and for $B \in A$,

$$\partial_B e^{(t-s)A} = \int_s^t e^{(t-\sigma)A} B(\sigma) e^{(\sigma-s)A} d\sigma.$$

Taking $s = 0$ in this last equation gives the familiar formula,

$$\partial_B e^{tA} = \int_0^t e^{(t-\sigma)A} B(\sigma) e^{\sigma A} d\sigma.$$

2.4 Logarithms.

Our goal in this section is to find an explicit local inverse to the exponential function, $A \rightarrow e^A$ for $A$ near zero. The existence of such an inverse can be deduced from the inverse function theorem although we will not need this fact here. We begin with the real variable fact that

$$\ln (1 + x) = \int_0^1 \frac{d}{ds} \ln (1 + sx) ds = \int_0^1 x (1 + sx)^{-1} ds.$$

Definition 2.40. When $A \in A$ satisfies $1 + sA$ is invertible for $0 \leq s \leq 1$ we define

$$\ln (1 + A) = \int_0^1 A (1 + sA)^{-1} ds. \tag{2.31}$$

The invertibility of $1 + sA$ for $0 \leq s \leq 1$ is satisfied if:

1. $A$ is nilpotent, i.e. $A^n = 0$ for some $N \in \mathbb{N}$ or more generally if
2. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \|A^n\| < \infty$ (for example assume that $\|A\| < 1$), or
3. if $X$ is a Hilbert space and $A^* = A$ with $A \geq 0$.

In the first two cases

$$(1 + sA)^{-1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-s)^n A^n.$$

Proposition 2.41. If $1 + sA$ is invertible for $0 \leq s \leq 1$, then

$$\partial_B \ln (1 + A) = \int_0^1 (1 + sA)^{-1} B (1 + sA)^{-1} ds. \tag{2.32}$$

If $0 = [A, B] := AB - BA$, Eq. (2.32) reduces to

$$\partial_B \ln (1 + A) = B (1 + A)^{-1}. \tag{2.33}$$
Corollary 2.42. Suppose that \( t \to A(t) \in \mathcal{A} \) is a \( C^1 \) function \( 1 + sA(t) \) is invertible for \( 0 \leq s \leq 1 \) for all \( t \in J = (a, b) \subset \mathbb{R} \). If \( g(t) := 1 + A(t) \) and \( t \in J \), then

\[
\frac{d}{dt} \ln (g(t)) = \int_0^1 (1-s+s g(t))^{-1} \dot{g}(t) (1-s+s g(t))^{-1} \, ds.
\]

Moreover if \([A(t), A(\tau)] = 0\) for all \( t, \tau \in J \) then,

\[
\frac{d}{dt} \ln (g(t)) = \dot{A}(t) (1 + A(t))^{-1}.
\]

Proof. Differentiating past the integral and then using Eq. (2.32) gives

\[
\frac{d}{dt} \ln (g(t)) = \int_0^1 (1+sA(t))^{-1} \dot{A}(t) (1+sA(t))^{-1} ds
\]

\[
= \int_0^1 (1+s(g(t)-1)) \dot{g}(t) (1+s(g(t)-1))^{-1} ds
\]

\[
= \int_0^1 (1-s + s g(t))^{-1} \dot{g}(t) (1-s + s g(t))^{-1} ds.
\]

For the second assertion we may use Eq. (2.33) instead Eq. (2.32) in order to immediately arrive at Eq. (2.33).

Theorem 2.43. If \( A \in \mathcal{A} \) satisfies, \( 1 + sA \) is invertible for \( 0 \leq s \leq 1 \), then

\[
e^{\ln(t+A)} = I + A.
\]

If \( C \in \mathcal{A} \) satisfies \( \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} \| C^n \|^n < 1 \) (for example assume \( \|C\| < \ln 2 \), i.e. \( \|C\| < 2 \)), then

\[
\ln e^C = C.
\]

This equation also holds if \( C \) is nilpotent or if \( X \) is a Hilbert space and \( C = C^* \)-with \( C \geq 0 \).

Proof. For \( 0 \leq t \leq 1 \) let

\[
C(t) = \ln (I + tA) = t \int_0^1 A(1 + s t A)^{-1} ds.
\]

Since \([C(t), C(\tau)] = 0\) for all \( \tau, t \in [0,1] \), if we let \( g(t) := e^{C(t)} \), then

\[
\dot{g}(t) = \frac{d}{dt} e^{C(t)} = \dot{C}(t) e^{C(t)} = A (1 + tA)^{-1} g(t) \text{ with } g(0) = I.
\]

Noting that \( g(t) = 1 + tA \) solves this ordinary differential equation, it follows by uniqueness of solutions to ODE’s that \( e^{C(t)} = g(t) = 1 + tA \). Evaluating this equation at \( t = 1 \) implies Eq. (2.33).

Now let \( C \in \mathcal{A} \) as in the statement of the theorem and for \( t \in \mathbb{R} \) set

\[
A(t) := e^{tC} - 1 = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!} C^n.
\]

Therefore,

\[
1 + sA(t) = 1 + s \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!} C^n
\]

with

\[
\left\| s \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!} C^n \right\| \leq s \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!} \| C^n \|^n < 1 \text{ for } 0 \leq s, t \leq 1.
\]

Because of this observation, \( \ln (e^{tC}) := \ln (1 + A(t)) \) is well defined and because \([A(t), A(\tau)] = 0\) for all \( \tau \) and \( t \) we may use Eq. (2.33) to learn,

\[
\frac{d}{dt} \ln (e^{tC}) := \dot{A}(t) (1 + A(t))^{-1} = Ce^{tC} e^{-tC} = C \text{ with } \ln (e^{0C}) = 0.
\]

The unique solution to this simple ODE is \( \ln (e^{tC}) = tC \) and evaluating this at \( t = 1 \) gives Eq. (2.37).
2.5 \textsc{C*-algebras}

We now are going to introduce the notion of “star” structure on a complex Banach algebra. We will be primarily motivated by the example of closed *-sub-algebras of the bounded linear operators on (in) a Hilbert space. For the rest of this section and essentially the rest of these notes we will assume that \( B \) is a \textbf{complex} Banach algebra.

\textbf{Definition 2.44.} An \textbf{involution} on a complex Banach algebra, \( B \), is a map \( a \in B \to a^* \in B \) satisfying:

1. \textit{involutory} \( a^{**} = a \)
2. \textit{additive} \( (a + b)^* = a^* + b^* \)
3. \textit{conjugate homogeneous} \( (\lambda a)^* = \overline{\lambda} a^* \)
4. \textit{anti–automorphic} \( (ab)^* = b^*a^* \).

If \( * \) is an involution on \( B \) and \( 1 \in B \), then automatically we have \( 1^* = 1 \).

Indeed, applying the involution to the identity, \( 1^* = 1 \cdot 1^* \) gives

\[
1 = 1^{**} = (1^*)^* = 1^* \cdot 1 = 1 \cdot 1^* = 1^*.
\]

For the rest of this section we let \( B \) be a Banach algebra with involution, \( * \).

\textbf{Definition 2.45.} If \( a \in B \) we say:

1. \( a \) is \textit{hermitian} if \( a = a^* \).
2. \( a \) is \textit{normal} if \( a^* a = a a^* \), i.e. \( [a, a^*] = 0 \) where \( [a, b] := ab - ba \).
3. \( a \) is \textit{unitary} if \( a a^* = a^* a = 1 \).

\textbf{Example 2.46.} Let \( G \) be a discrete group and \( B = \ell^1(G, \mathbb{C}) \) as in Proposition 2.4. We define \( * \) on \( B \) so that \( \delta_g^* = \delta_{g^{-1}} \). In more detail if \( f = \sum_{g \in G} f(g) \delta_g \), then

\[
f^* = \sum_{g \in G} f(g) \delta_g^* = \sum_{g \in G} f(g) \delta_{g^{-1}} \quad \implies \quad f^*(g) := \overline{f(g^{-1})}.
\]

Notice that

\[
(\delta_g \delta_h)^* = \delta_{gh}^* = \delta_{(gh)^{-1}} = \delta_{h^{-1}g^{-1}} = \delta_{h^{-1}} \delta_{g^{-1}} = \delta_h \delta_g^*.
\]

Using this or by direct verification one shows \((f \cdot h)^* = h^* \cdot f^* \). The other properties of \( * \) are now easily verified.

\textbf{Definition 2.47 (\textsc{C*-condition}).} A Banach * algebra \( B \) is

1. \( * \) \textit{multiplicative} if \( \|a^*a\| = \|a^*\|\|a\| \)
2. \( * \) \textit{isometric} if \( \|a^*\| = \|a\| \)
3. \( * \) \textit{quadratic} if \( \|a^*a\| = \|a\|^2 \).

We refer to item 3. as the \textsc{C*-condition}.

\textbf{Lemma 2.48.} Conditions 1) and 2) in Definition 2.47 are equivalent to condition 3), i.e. \( * \) is multiplicative if \( * \) is an isometry.

\textbf{Proof.} Clearly \( * \) is multiplicative implies \( * \) is quadratic. For the reverse implication; if \( \|a^*a\| = \|a\|^2 \) for all \( a \in B \), then

\[
\|a\|^2 \leq \|a^*\|\|a\| \quad \implies \quad \|a\| \leq \|a^*\|.
\]

Replacing \( a \) by \( a^* \) in this inequality shows \( \|a\| = \|a^*\| \) and hence Thus \( \|a^*a\| = \|a\|^2 = \|a\|\|a^*\| \)

\textbf{Remark 2.49.} It is fact the case that seemingly weaker condition 1. in Definition 2.47 by itself implies condition 3 but the implication 1. \( \implies \) 3. is quite non-trivial. See Theorem 16.1 on page 45 of [12]. [That this result holds under the additional assumption that \( B \) is commutative and “symmetric” is contained in Theorem 7.27 below.] Historically condition 1. is called the \textsc{C*-condition} on a norm and condition 3. is called the \( B^* \)– condition on a norm, see the Wikipedia article for information about \( B^* \)-algebras being the same as \textsc{C*-algebras}.

\textbf{Definition 2.50.} A \textbf{\textsc{C*-algebra}} is a \( * \) quadratic algebra, i.e. \( B \) is a \textsc{C*-algebra} if \( B \) is a Banach algebra with involution \( * \) such that \( \|a^*a\| = \|a\|^2 \) for all \( a \in B \).

The next proposition gives the primary motivating examples of \textsc{C*-algebras}.

\textbf{Proposition 2.51.} Let \( H \) be a Hilbert space and \( B \) be a \( * \)– closed and operator norm-closed sub-algebra of \( B(H) \), where \( A^* \) is the adjoint of \( A \in B(H) \). Then \( (B, *) \) is a \textsc{C*-algebra}.

\textbf{Proof.} From the basic properties of the adjoint, \( B(H) \), is a \( * \)-algebra so the main point is to verify the \textsc{C*-condition}, which we now do in two steps.

\begin{enumerate}
\item If \( k \in H \), then

\[
\|A^*k\|_H = \sup_{\|h\|_H = 1} |(A^*k, h)| = \sup_{\|h\|_H = 1} |(k, Ah)| \\
\leq \sup_{\|h\|_H = 1} \|k\|_H \|Ah\|_H = \|A\|_{op} \|k\|_H.
\]

From this inequality it follows that \( \|A^*\|_{op} \leq \|A\|_{op} \). Applying this inequality with \( A \) replaced by \( A^* \) shows \( \|A\|_{op} \leq \|A^*\|_{op} \) and hence \( \|A^*\| = \|A\| \) which prove that \( * \) is an isometry.
\end{enumerate}

Remark 2.52. Irvine Segal’s original definition of $C^*$-algebra was in fact a $*$-Closed sub-algebra of $B(H)$ for some Hilbert space $H$. The letter “$C$” used here indicated that the sub-algebra was closed under the operator norm topology. Later, the definition was abstracted to the $C^*$-algebra definition we have given above. It is however a (standard) fact that by the “GNS construction,” every abstract $C^*$-algebra may be “represented” by a “concrete” (i.e. sub-algebra of $B(H)$) $C^*$-algebra. The “GNS construction” along with appropriate choices of states shows that in fact every abstract $C^*$-algebra has a faithful representation as a $C^*$-subalgebra in the sense of Segal, see Conway [10, Theorem 5.17, p. 253]. The $B^*$-terminology has fallen out of favour. [Incidentally, a von Neumann algebra is a w.o.t. (or s.o.t.) closed $*$-subalgebra of $B(H)$ and is often called a $W^*$-algebra.] See the Appendix 2.5.4 to this section for some examples of embedding commutative $C^*$-algebras into $B(H)$.

2.5.1 Examples

Here are a few more examples of $C^*$-algebras.

Example 2.53. If $X$ is a compact Hausdorff space then $B := C(X, \mathbb{C})$ with

$$\|f\| = \sup_{x \in X} |f(x)| \quad \text{and} \quad f^*(x) := \overline{f(x)}$$

is a $C^*$-algebra with identity. If $X$ is only locally compact, then $B := C_0(X, \mathbb{C})$ is a $C^*$-algebra without identity. We will see that these are, up to isomorphism, all of the commutative $C^*$-algebras.

Example 2.54. Let $B$ be a $C^*$-subalgebra of $B(H)$ and then set

$$B_1 = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} A & 0 \\ 0 & A \end{pmatrix} : A \in B \right\} \subset B(H \oplus H).$$

Clearly,

$$B \ni A \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} A & 0 \\ 0 & A \end{pmatrix} \in B_1$$

is a $C^*$-isomorphism. This example shows that $B$ and $B_1$ are the same as abstract $C^*$-algebras. This example shows that the $C^*$-algebra structure of $B$ is not necessarily the whole story when one cares about how $B$ is embedded inside of the bounded operators on a Hilbert space.

Example 2.55. If $(\Omega, F, \mu)$ is a measure space then $L^\infty(\mu) := L^\infty(\Omega, F, \mu; \mathbb{C})$ is a commutative complex $C^*$-algebra with identity. Again we let $f^*(\omega) = \overline{f(\omega)}$.

The $C^*$-condition is

$$\|f^*f\| = \sup \left\{ M > 0 : |f|^2 \leq M \ a.e. \right\} = \sup \left\{ M^2 > 0 : |f| \leq M \ a.e. \right\} = \|f\|^2.$$

Notation 2.56 (Bounded Multiplication Operators). Given a measure space $(\Omega, F, \mu)$ and a bounded measurable function $q : \Omega \to \mathbb{C}$, let $M_q : L^2(\mu) \to L^2(\mu)$ denote the operation of multiplication by $q$, i.e. $M_q : L^2(\mu) \to L^2(\mu)$ is defined by $M_q f = q f$ for all $f \in L^2(\mu)$.

Definition 2.57 (Atoms). Let $(\Omega, F, \mu)$ be a measure space. A set $A \in F$ is said to be an atom of $\mu$ if $\mu(A) > 0$ and $\mu(A \cap B)$ is either $\mu(A)$ or 0 for every $B \in F$. We say $A$ is an infinite atom if it is an atom such that $\mu(A) = \infty$.

Theorem 2.58. Let $(\Omega, F, \mu)$ be a measure space with no infinite atoms and

$$B = \{ M_f : f \in L^\infty(\mu) \} =: M_{L^\infty(\mu)}$$

which we view as a $*$-subalgebra of $B(L^2(\mu))$. Then $B$ is a $C^*$-subalgebra of $B(L^2(\mu))$ and the map,

$$L^\infty(\mu) \ni f \mapsto M_f \in B$$

is a $C^*$-isometric isomorphism. Explicitly that isometry condition means,

$$\|M_f\|_{op} = \|f\|_{\infty} \quad \text{for all} \ f \in L^\infty(\mu).$$
Proof. Given $f,g \in L^\infty(\mu)$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, one readily shows,

$$M_f + M_g = M_{f+g}, \quad M_{\lambda f} = \lambda M_f, \quad M_f M_g = M_{f g}, \quad \text{and} \quad M_f^* = M_f,$$

i.e. $M_{(\cdot)} : L^\infty(\mu) \to B(L^2(\mu))$ is a $*$-algebra homomorphism. Since $\|M_f g\|_2 = \|f\|_2 \|g\|_2 \leq \|f\|_\infty \|g\|_2$, it follows that $\|M_f\|_{op} \leq \|f\|_\infty$ with equality when $\|f\|_\infty = 0$. For the reverse inequality we may assume that $\|f\|_\infty > 0$. If $0 < k < \|f\|_\infty$, then $\mu((|f| \geq k)) > 0$ and since $\mu$ has not finite atoms we may find $A \subset \{|f| \geq k\}$ such that $0 < \mu(A) < \infty$. It then follows that $\|1_A\|_2 = \sqrt{\mu(A)} \in (0, \infty)$ and

$$\|M_f\|_{op} \geq \frac{\|f 1_A\|_2}{\|1_A\|_2} \geq k.$$

As this holds for all $k < \|f\|_\infty$ we conclude that $\|M_f\|_{op} \geq \|f\|_\infty$ and so Eq. (2.40) has been proved.

Since $B$ is the image of $M_{(\cdot)}$, $M_{(\cdot)}$ is a linear isometry, and $L^\infty(\mu)$ is complete, it follows that $B$ is complete and hence closed in $B(L^2(\mu))$. Thus $B$ is a $C^*$-subalgebra of $B(L^2(\mu))$ and the proof is done. \hfill \blacksquare

Example 2.59. If $T_1, \ldots, T_n \in B(H)$, let $A(T_1, \ldots, T_n)$ be the smallest subalgebra of $B(H)$ containing $\{T_1, \ldots, T_n\}$, i.e. $A$ consists of linear combination of words in $\{T_1, \ldots, T_n\}$. With this notation, $A(T_1, \ldots, T_n, T_1^*, \ldots, T_n^*)$ is the smallest $*$-subalgebra of $B(H)$ which contains $\{T_1, \ldots, T_n\}$. We let

$$C^*(T_1, \ldots, T_n) := A(T_1, \ldots, T_n, T_1^*, \ldots, T_n^*)$$

be the $C^*$-algebra generated by $\{T_1, \ldots, T_n\}$.

Example 2.60. If $T_1, \ldots, T_n \in B(H)$ are commuting self-adjoint operators, then

$$A(T_1, \ldots, T_n) := \{p(T_1, \ldots, T_n) : p \in \mathbb{C}[z_1, \ldots, z_n] \ni p(0) = 0\}$$

is a commutative $*$-subalgebra of $B(H)$. We also have

$$A(I, T_1, \ldots, T_n) := \{p(T_1, \ldots, T_n) : p \in \mathbb{C}[z_1, \ldots, z_n]\}$$

where if $p(z_1, \ldots, z_n) = p_0 + q(z_1, \ldots, z_n)$ with $q(0) = 0$ we let

$$p(T_1, \ldots, T_n) = p_0 I + q(T_1, \ldots, T_n).$$

For most of this chapter we will mostly interested in the commutative $*$-subalgebra, $A(I, T)$ where $T \in B(H)$ with $T^* = T$.

Proposition 2.61. Let $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mu)$ be a measure space, $B = L^\infty(\mu)$ be the $C^*$-algebra of essentially bounded functions, $\{f_k\}_{k=1}^\infty \subset B$, $\mathbf{f} = (f_1, \ldots, f_n) : \Omega \to \mathbb{C}^n$, and $\text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f})$ be the essential range of $\mathbf{f}$ (see Definition 1.32). Then $\tilde{f} : C(\text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f})) \to L^\infty(\mu)$ defined by $\tilde{f}(\psi) = \psi(\mathbf{f})$ for all $\psi \in C(\text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f}))$ is an isometric $C^*$-isomorphism onto $C^*(\mathbf{f}, 1)$.

Proof. Let us first show that

$$\|\tilde{f}(\mathbf{f})\|_\infty = \|\psi\|_{C(\text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f}))}$$

for all $\psi \in C(\text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f}))$. (2.41)

It is clear that $\|\tilde{f}(\mathbf{f})\|_\infty \leq \|\psi\|_{C(\text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f}))}$. If $M < \|\psi\|_{C(\text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f}))}$ then there exists $z \in \text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f})$ so that $M < |\psi(z)|$ and for this $z$, $\mu(\{|f - z| < \varepsilon\}) > 0$ for all $\varepsilon > 0$. By the continuity of $\psi$ there exists $\varepsilon > 0$ so that $|\psi(w)| > M$ for $\|w - z\| < \varepsilon$ and hence

$$\mu(|\psi(f)| > M) \geq \mu(\|f - z\| < \varepsilon) > 0$$

from which it follows that $\|\tilde{f}(\mathbf{f})\|_\infty \geq M$. As $M < \|\psi\|_{C(\text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f}))}$ was arbitrary, it follows that $\|\tilde{f}(\mathbf{f})\|_\infty \geq \|\psi\|_{C(\text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f}))}$ and Eq. (2.41) is proved.

Let $B_0 := \tilde{f}(C(\text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f})))$ be the image of $\mathbf{f}$ which, as $\tilde{f}$ is an isometric $C^*$-homomorphism, is a closed $*$-subalgebra of $B$. To finish the proof we must show $B_0 = C^*(\mathbf{f}, 1)$.

Given $\psi \in C(\text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f}))$, there exists $p_k \in \mathbb{C}[z_1, \ldots, z_n, \tilde{z}_1, \ldots, \tilde{z}_n]$ such that

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \max_{z \in \text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f})} |\psi(z) - p_n(z, \tilde{z})| = 0.$$

Using

$$p(f, \tilde{f}) := p(f_1, \ldots, f_n, \tilde{f}_1, \ldots, \tilde{f}_n) \in C^*(\mathbf{f}, 1),$$

along with the isometry property in Eq. (2.41), it follows that

$$\|\tilde{f}(\mathbf{f}) - p_k(f, \tilde{f})\|_\infty = \max_{z \in \text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f})} |\psi(z) - p_k(z, \tilde{z})| \to 0$$

as $k \to \infty$,

which implies $\psi(\mathbf{f}) \in C^*(\mathbf{f}, 1)$, i.e. $B_0 \subset C^*(\mathbf{f}, 1)$. For the opposite inclusion simply observe that if we let $\psi_i(z) = z_i$ for $i \in [n]$, then $f_i = \tilde{f}(\psi_i) \in B_0$ for each $i \in [n]$. As $B_0$ is a $C^*$-algebra we must also have that $C^*(\mathbf{f}, 1) \subset B_0$ and the proof is complete. \hfill \blacksquare

Remark 2.62. It is also easy to verify that

$$C^*(\mathbf{f}) = \{\psi(\mathbf{f}) : \psi \in C(\text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f})) \ni \psi(0, \ldots, 0) = 0\}$$

and that

$$\{\psi \in C(\text{essran}_\mu(\mathbf{f})) : \psi(0, \ldots, 0) = 0\} \to \psi(f_1, \ldots, f_n) \in C^*(\mathbf{f})$$

is a isomorphism of $C^*$-algebras.” We leave the details to the reader.
Corollary 2.63. Let \((\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mu)\) be a measure space with no infinite atoms, \(B = M_{L^\infty(\mu)}\) as in Theorem 2.58 \(\{f_j\}_{j=1}^\infty \subset L^\infty(\mu)\), and \(f = (f_1, \ldots, f_n) : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^n\). Then the map
\[
C(\text{essran}_\mu(f)) \ni \psi \mapsto M_\psi(f) \in C^*(M_{f_1}, \ldots, M_{f_n}, 1) \subset \mathcal{B}
\]
is an isometric isomorphism of \(C^*\)-algebras.

2.5.2 Some Consequences of the \(C^*\)-condition

Let us now explore some of the consequences of the \(C^*\)-condition. The following simple lemma turns out to be a very important consequence of the \(C^*\)-condition which will be used in Proposition 4.3 in order to show:

Lemma 2.64. If \(B\) is a \(C^*\)-algebra and \(B\) is a normal element of \(B\), then \(\|b^2\| = \|b\|^2\).

Proof. This is easily proved as follows;
\[
\|b^2\|^2 \overset{C^*-\text{cond.}}{=} \|b^*b^2\| \overset{\text{Normal}}{=} \|b^*b\|^2 \overset{C^*-\text{cond.}}{=} \|b\|^4.
\]

Lemma 2.65. If \(B\) is a unital \(C^*\)-algebra and \(u \in \mathcal{B}\) is unitary, then \(\|u\| = 1\). Moreover, if \(u, v \in \mathcal{B}\) are unitary, then \(\|uv\| = \|a\|\) for all \(a \in \mathcal{B}\).

Proof. Since \(1 = u^*u\), it follows by the \(C^*\)-condition that \(1 = \|1\| = \|u^*u\| = \|u\|^2\), from which it follows that \(\|u\| = 1\). If \(a \in \mathcal{B}\), then
\[
\|a\| \leq \|u\| \|a\| \|v\| = \|a\|.
\]

By replacing \(a\) by \(u^*av^*\) in the above inequality we also find that \(\|a\| \leq \|u^*av^*\|\). We may replace \(u\) by \(u^*\) and \(v\) by \(v^*\) in the last inequality in order to show \(\|a\| \leq \|uv\|\) which along with the previously displayed equation completes the proof.

Example 2.66. If \(A \in \mathcal{B}\) is a \(C^*\)-algebra, then using the fact that \(*\) is an isometry, it follows that
\[
(e^A)^* = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{1}{n!} A^n \right)^* = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} (A^*)^n = e^{A^*}.
\]
Thus if \(A^* = A\), we find
\[
(e^A)^* = e^{-iA^*} = e^{-iA} = (e^A)^{-1},
\]
which shows \(e^A\) is unitary. This result is generalized in the following proposition.

Proposition 2.67. Suppose that \(B\) is a \(C^*\)-algebra with identity and \(t \rightarrow A(t) \in \mathcal{B}\) is continuous and \(A(t)^* = -A(t)\) for all \(t \in \mathbb{R}\). If \(u(t)\) is the unique solution to
\[
\dot{u}(t) = A(t) u(t) \quad \text{with} \quad u(0) = 1
\]
then \(u(t)\) is unitary.

Proof. Let \(u(t, s)\) denote the solution to
\[
\dot{u}(t, s) = A(t) u(t, s) \quad \text{with} \quad u(s, s) = 1
\]
so that \(u(t) = u(t, 0)\). From Proposition 2.33 it follows that \(u(t)^{-1} = u(0, t)\) and from Proposition 2.36 we conclude that
\[
\frac{d}{dt} u(t)^{-1} = \frac{d}{dt} u(0, t) = -u(0, t) A(t) = -u(t)^{-1} A(t) = u(t)^{-1} A(t)^*.
\]
On the other hand taking the adjoint of Eq. (2.42) shows
\[
\dot{u}^*(t) = u(t)^* A(t)^* \quad \text{with} \quad u^*(0) = 1.
\]
So by uniqueness of solutions we conclude that \(u^*(t) = u(t)^{-1}\).

Theorem 2.68 (Fuglede-Putnam Theorem, see Conway, p. 278). Let \(B\) be a \(C^*\)-algebra with identity and \(M\) and \(N\) be normal elements in \(B\) and \(M, N \in \mathcal{B}\) satisfy \(NB = BM\), then \(N^*B = BM^*\). In particular, taking \(M = N\) implies \([N, B] = 0\) implies \([N^*, B] = 0\). [Note well that \(B\) is not assumed to be normal here.]

Proof. Given \(w \in \mathbb{C}\) let
\[
u(t) := e^{twN} Be^{-twM}.
\]
Then \(\nu(0) = B\) and
\[
\dot{\nu}(t) = w e^{twN} [NB - BM] e^{-twM} = 0
\]
and hence \(\nu(t) = B\) for all \(t\), i.e. \(e^{wN} Be^{-wM} = B\) for all \(w \in \mathbb{C}\).
Now for \(z \in \mathbb{C}\) let \(f : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}\) be the analytic function,

\[
f(z) = e^{zN} Be^{-zM}.
\]
We now take \( w \in B \) of all elements of Corollary 2.69. Again suppose \( \mathcal{B} = B(\mathcal{H}) \) and for \( u \in E^M_\lambda \) we have for \( v \in E^M_\lambda \) that

\[
\langle M^*u, v \rangle = \langle u, Mv \rangle = \alpha \langle u, v \rangle
\]

from which it follows that \( \langle M^*u, v \rangle = 0 \) if \( \alpha \neq \lambda \) or if \( \alpha = \lambda \) and \( u \perp v \). Thus we may conclude that \( M^*u = \lambda u \) for all \( u \in E^M_\lambda \). With this preparation, \( NBu = BMu = B\lambda u = \lambda Bu \) and therefore \( Bu \in E^M_N \). Therefore it follows that

\[
N^*Bu = \lambda Bu = B\lambda u = BM^*u.
\]

As \( u \in E^M_N \) was arbitrary and \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \) was arbitrary it follows that \( N^*B = BM^* \).

**Second proof.** A key point of \( M \) being normal is that for all \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \) and \( u \in H \),

\[
\| (M - \lambda) u \|^2 = \langle (M - \lambda) u, (M - \lambda) u \rangle = \langle u, (M - \lambda)^* (M - \lambda) u \rangle = \langle u, (M - \lambda) \rangle (M - \lambda)^* u \rangle = \| (M - \lambda)^* u \|^2.
\]

Thus if \( \{u_j\}_{j=1}^{\dim H} \) is an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors of \( M \) with \( Mu_j = \lambda_j u_j \) then \( M^*u_j = \lambda_j^* u_j \). Thus if we apply \( NB = BM \) to \( u_j \) we find,

\[
NBu_j = BMu_j = \lambda_j Bu_j
\]

and therefore as \( N \) is normal, \( N^*Bu_j = \lambda_j Bu_j \). Since \( M \) is normal we also have

\[
N^*Bu_j = B\lambda_j u_j = BM^*u_j.
\]

As this holds for all \( j \), we conclude that \( N^*B = BM^* \).

### 2.5.3 Symmetric Condition

**Definition 2.73.** An involution \( * \) in a Banach algebra \( B \) with unit is symmetric if \( 1 + a^*a \) is invertible for all \( a \in B \).

**Lemma 2.74.** If \( H \) is a complex Hilbert space, then \( B(H) \), then \( B(H) \) is symmetric. [It is in fact true that any \( C^* \)-subalgebra, \( B \), of \( B(H) \) is symmetric but this requires more proof than we can give at this time. See Theorem ?? below for the missing ingredient.]
Proof. It clearly suffices to show $B(H)$ is symmetric, i.e. that $I + A^*A$ is invertible for any $A \in B(H)$. The key point is that for any $h \in H$,
\[
\|h\|^2 - \|A h\|^2 = \langle (I + A^*A) h, h \rangle \leq \|(I + A^*A) h\| \|h\|
\]
and hence
\[
\|(I + A^*A) h\| \geq \|h\|.
\] (2.43)
This inequality clearly shows $\text{Nul} (I + A^*A) = \{0\}$ and that $I + A^*A$ has closed range, see Corollary 2.10. Therefore we conclude that
\[
\text{Ran} (I + A^*A) = \text{Ran} (I + A^*A)^{-1} = H
\]
and so $I + A^*A$ is algebraically invertible and hence invertible in $B(H)$ by Lemma 2.9. In fact, because of Eq. 2.43, we have the estimate,
\[
\|(I + A^*A)^{-1}\|_{op} \leq 1.
\]
If we have Theorem ?? at our disposal, then we may conclude that $(I + A^*A)^{-1} \in C^*(A^*A, I) \subset C^*(A, I)$ and with this result we may assert that theorem holds for any $C^*$-subalgebra, $B$, of $B(H)$.

Example 2.75. Referring to Example 2.46 with $G = \mathbb{Z}$, we claim that $\ell^1(\mathbb{Z})$ with convolution for multiplication is an abelian $*$-Banach algebra which is not a $C^*$-algebra. For example, let $f := \delta_0 - \delta_1 - \delta_2$, then
\[
f^*f = (\delta_0 - \delta_{-1} - \delta_{-2}) (\delta_0 - \delta_1 - \delta_2)
\]
\[
= \delta_0 - \delta_1 - \delta_2 + (\delta_{-1} + \delta_0 + \delta_1) + (\delta_{-2} + \delta_{-1} + \delta_0)
\]
\[
= 3\delta_0 - 2\delta_2 - \delta_{-2}
\]
and hence
\[
\|f^*f\| = 3 + 1 + 1 = 5 < 3^2 = \|f\|^2.
\]
As a consequence of Lemma 2.74 and assuming Remark 2.52, every $C^*$-algebra is symmetric, and so this example implies $\ell^1(\mathbb{Z})$ is not a $C^*$-algebra. See Remark 2.20 below for some more information about the symmetry condition on a Banach algebra. See Exercise ?? for more on this example.

2.5.4 Appendix: Embeddings of function $C^*$-algebras into $B(H)$

The next example is a special case of the GNS construction in disguise. See Remark 2.52 for more comments and references in this direction.

Example 2.76. Suppose that $X$ is a compact Hausdorff space, $\mu$ is counting measure on $X$, and $H = L^2(X, \mu)$. Then
\[
C := \{M_f \in B(H) : f \in C(X) := C(X, \mathbb{C}) \subset B(H)\}
\]
is a $C^*$-algebra. Indeed $C$ is a $*$-algebra since, $M_f + kM_g = M_{f+kg}$, $M_f M_g = M_{fg}$, and $M_f = M_f$ for all $f, g \in C(X)$. Moreover, we have
\[
\|M_f\|_{op} = \sup_{x \in X} |f(x)| = \|f\|_u
\] (2.44)
from which it follows that $C$ is closed in $B(H)$ in the operator norm. In this case $H$ may be a highly non-separable Hilbert space. However the above construction also works for any measure no infinite atom measure, $\mu$ on $B_X$, such that $\text{supp}(\mu) = X$. In particular $\mu$ is a $\sigma$-finite measure on open sets and $X$ is separable, then $L^2(X, \mu)$ will be separable as well.

For an explicit choice of measure, $D = \{x_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ is a countable dense subset of $X$, let
\[
\mu := \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \delta_{x_n}
\]
in which case $\text{supp}(\mu) = X$ and take $H = \tilde{H} = L^2(X, \mathbb{C}, \mu)$ in the above construction. In this special case one directly checks Eq. (2.44) using,
\[
\|M_f\|_{op} = \sup_{x \in D} |f(x)| = \sup_{x \in X} |f(x)| = \|f\|_u \quad \forall f \in C(X).
\]

2.6 Exercises

Exercise 2.8. To each $A \in A$, we may define $L_A, R_A : A \to A$ by
\[
L_A B = AB \quad \text{and} \quad R_A B = BA \quad \forall B \in A.
\]
Show $L_A, R_A \in L(A)$ and that
\[
\|L_A\|_{L(A)} = \|A\|_A = \|R_A\|_{L(A)}.
\]

Exercise 2.9. Suppose that $A : \mathbb{R} \to A$ is a continuous function and $U, V : \mathbb{R} \to A$ are the unique solution to the linear differential equations
\[
\dot{V} (t) = A(t) V(t) \quad \text{with} \quad V(0) = I
\] (2.45)
and
\[
\dot{U} (t) = -U(t) A(t) \quad \text{with} \quad U(0) = I.
\] (2.46)
Prove that $V(t)$ is invertible and that $V^{-1}(t) = U(t)$, where by abuse of notation I am writing $V^{-1}(t)$ for $[V(t)]^{-1}$.

**Hints:** 1) show $\frac{d}{dt} [U(t)V(t)] = 0$ (which is sufficient if $\dim(X) < \infty$) and 2) show $y(t) := V(t)U(t)$ solves a linear differential ordinary differential equation that has $y \equiv I$ as an obvious solution. (The results of Exercise 2.8 may be useful here.) Then use the uniqueness of solutions to linear O.D.E.s

**Exercise 2.10.** Suppose that $A \in \mathcal{A}$ and $v \in X$ is an eigenvector of $A$ with eigenvalue $\lambda$, i.e. that $Av = \lambda v$. Show $e^{tA}v = e^{\lambda v}$. Also show that if $X = \mathbb{R}^n$ and $A$ is a diagonalizable $n \times n$ matrix with

$$ A = SDS^{-1} $$

then $e^{tA} = S(e^{tD}S^{-1}$ where $e^{tD} = \text{diag}(e^{\lambda_1}, \ldots, e^{\lambda_n})$. Here $\text{diag}(\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_n)$ denotes the diagonal matrix $A$ such that $A_{ii} = \lambda_i$ for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$.

**Exercise 2.11.** Suppose that $A, B \in \mathcal{A}$ let $\text{ad}_AB = [A, B] := AB - BA$. Show $e^{tA}Be^{-tA} = e^{t\text{ad}_A(B)}$. In particular, if $[A, B] = 0$ then $e^{tA}Be^{-tA} = B$ for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$.

**Exercise 2.12.** Suppose that $A, B \in \mathcal{A}$ and $[A, B] := AB - BA = 0$. Show that $e^{(A+B)} = e^Ae^B$.

**Exercise 2.13.** Suppose $A \in C(\mathbb{R}, \mathcal{A})$ satisfies $[A(t), A(s)] = 0$ for all $s, t \in \mathbb{R}$. Show

$$ y(t) := e\left(\int_0^t A(\tau) d\tau\right) x $$

is the unique solution to $\dot{y}(t) = A(t)y(t)$ with $y(0) = x$.

**Exercise 2.14.** Compute $e^{tA}$ when

$$ A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} $$

and use the result to prove the formula

$$ \cos(s + t) = \cos s \cos t - \sin s \sin t. $$

**Hint:** Sum the series and use $e^{tA}e^{sA} = e^{(t+s)A}$. Alternatively, compute $\frac{d}{ds} e^{tA} = -e^{tA}$ and then solve this equation.

**Exercise 2.15.** Compute $e^{tA}$ when

$$ A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & a & b \\ 0 & 0 & c \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} $$

with $a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}$. Use your result to compute $e^{(\lambda I + A)}$ where $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ and $I$ is the $3 \times 3$ identity matrix. **Hint:** Sum the series.

---

**Exercise 2.16 (L. Gårding’s trick I.)** Prove Theorem 2.19 i.e. suppose that $T_t \in \mathcal{A}$ for $t \geq 0$ satisfies:

1. (Semi-group property.) $T_0 = Id_X$ and $T_tT_s = T_{t+s}$ for all $s, t \geq 0$.
2. (Norm Continuity at 0+) $t \to T_t$ is continuous at 0, i.e. $\|T_t - I\|_\mathcal{A} \to 0$ as $t \downarrow 0$.

Then show there exists $A \in \mathcal{A}$ such that $T_t = e^{tA}$ where $e^{tA}$ is defined in Eq. (2.10). Here is an outline of a possible proof based on L. Gårding’s “trick.”

1. Using the right continuity at 0 and the semi-group property for $T_t$, show there are constants $M$ and $C$ such that $\|T_t\|_\mathcal{A} \leq MC^t$ for all $t > 0$.
2. Show $t \in [0, \infty) \to T_t \in \mathcal{A}$ is continuous.
3. For $\varepsilon > 0$, let

$$ S_\varepsilon := \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \int_0^\varepsilon T_\tau d\tau \in \mathcal{A}. $$

Show $S_\varepsilon \to I$ as $\varepsilon \downarrow 0$ and conclude from this that $S_\varepsilon$ is invertible when $\varepsilon > 0$ is sufficiently small. For the remainder of the proof fix such a small $\varepsilon > 0$.

4. Show

$$ T_tS_\varepsilon = \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \int_t^{t+\varepsilon} T_\tau d\tau = S_\varepsilon T_t $$

and conclude using the fundamental theorem of calculus that

$$ \frac{d}{dt} T_tS_\varepsilon = \frac{1}{\varepsilon} [T_{t+\varepsilon} - T_t] \text{ for } t > 0 \text{ and } \frac{d}{dt} [0, t] \to S_\varepsilon := \lim_{\varepsilon \downarrow 0} \left( \frac{T_t - I}{\varepsilon} \right) S_\varepsilon = \frac{1}{\varepsilon} [T_t - I]. $$

5. Using the fact that $S_\varepsilon$ is invertible, conclude $A = \lim_{t \to 0} t^{-1}(T_t - I)$ exists in $\mathcal{A}$ and that

$$ A = \frac{1}{\varepsilon} (T_t - I) S_\varepsilon^{-1} $$

and moreover,

$$ \frac{d}{dt} T_t = AT_t \text{ for } t > 0. $$

6. Using step 5., show $\frac{d}{dt} e^{-tA}T_t = 0$ for all $t > 0$ and therefore $e^{-tA}T_t = e^{-0A}T_0 = I$.

**Exercise 2.17 (Duhamel’s Principle).** Suppose that $A : \mathbb{R} \to \mathcal{A}$ is a continuous function and $V : \mathbb{R} \to \mathcal{A}$ is the unique solution to the linear differential equation (2.45) which we repeat here:

$$ \dot{V}(t) = A(t)V(t) \text{ with } V(0) = I. $$
Let $W_0 \in \mathcal{A}$ and $H \in C(\mathbb{R}, \mathcal{A})$ be given. Show that the unique solution to the differential equation:

$$\dot{W}(t) = A(t)W(t) + H(t) \text{ with } W(0) = W_0$$  \hspace{1cm} (2.47)

is given by

$$W(t) = V(t)W_0 + V(t) \int_0^t V(\tau)^{-1} H(\tau) \, d\tau.$$  \hspace{1cm} (2.48)

**Hint:** compute $\frac{d}{dt}[V^{-1}(t)W(t)].$
Spectrum of a Single Element

Convention. Henceforth all Banach algebras, $B$, are complex and have an identity.

Definition 3.1. For $a \in B$;

1. The spectrum of $a$ is
   $$\sigma(a) := \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} : a - \lambda \text{ is not invertible} \},$$

2. the resolvent set of $a$ is
   $$\rho(a) := \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} : a - \lambda \text{ is invertible} \} = \sigma(a)^c,$$
   and

3. the spectral radius of $a$ is
   $$\rho_1(a) := \sup \{ |\lambda| : \lambda \in \sigma(a) \}.$$

We will see later in Corollary 3.41 that $\sigma(a) \neq \emptyset$.

Proposition 3.2. For all $a \in B$, $\sigma(a)$ is compact and $\rho_1(a) \leq \|a\|$. 

Proof. Since $\lambda \in \mathbb{C} \rightarrow a - \lambda \in B$ is continuous and $\rho(a) = \{ \lambda : a - \lambda \in B_{\text{inv}} \}$, $\rho(a)$ is open by Corollary 2.13 and hence $\sigma(a) = \rho(a)^c$ is closed. If $|\lambda| > \|a\|$, then $\|\lambda^{-1}a\| < 1$ and hence
   $$a - \lambda = \lambda(\lambda^{-1}a - 1) \in B_{\text{inv}}.$$

Therefore if $|\lambda| > \|a\|$ then $\lambda \in \rho(a)$ from which we conclude that $\rho_1(a) \leq \|a\|$ and so $\sigma(a)$ is compact. \hfill \qed

Lemma 3.3. If $B$ is a $*$-algebra with unit then
   $$\sigma(a^*) = \overline{\sigma(a)} = \{ \bar{\lambda} : \lambda \in \sigma(a) \}.$$

Proof. The point is that $a \in B$ is invertible iff $a^*$ is invertible since $[a^*]^{-1} = (a^{-1})^*$, Thus $\lambda \in \rho(a)$ iff $a - \lambda 1$ is invertible iff $a^* - \bar{\lambda} 1 = (a - \lambda 1)^*$ is invertible iff $\bar{\lambda} \in \rho(a^*)$. \hfill \qed

Notation 3.4 If $B$ is a Banach subalgebra of $A$ with $1 \in B$ and $a$ is an element of $B$, then we let $\sigma_A(a)$ and $\sigma_B(a)$ be the spectrum of $a$ computed in $A$ and $B$ respectively.

Remark 3.5. Continuing the notation above, we always have $\sigma_B(a) \subseteq \sigma_A(a)$ for all $a \in A$. Indeed, if $\lambda \notin \sigma_A(a)$, then $a - \lambda$ is invertible in $A$ and hence also in $B$, i.e. $\lambda \notin \sigma_B(a)$. See Proposition 3.14 and Theorem 3.12 to see that $\sigma_B(a) \not\subset \sigma_A(a)$ is possible.

Proposition 3.6. Let $1 \in A \subset B$ be as in Notation 3.4. Then $\sigma_A(a) = \sigma_B(a)$ for all $a \in A$ iff $A \cap B_{\text{inv}} = A_{\text{inv}}$ iff $A \cap B_{\text{inv}} \subset A_{\text{inv}}$. Put another way, $\sigma_A(a) = \sigma_B(a)$ if whenever $a \in A$ is invertible in $B$, then $a$ is also invertible in $A$.

Proof. Suppose that $\sigma_A(a) = \sigma_B(a)$ for all $a \in A$. Then if $a \in A \cap B_{\text{inv}}$, we have $a \notin \sigma_B(a) = \sigma_A(a)$, i.e. $a \in A_{\text{inv}}$ which shows $A \cap B_{\text{inv}} \subset A_{\text{inv}}$. The opposite inclusion is trivial.

Conversely, suppose that $A \cap B_{\text{inv}} = A_{\text{inv}}$. Because of Remark 3.3 we must show for any $a \in A$ that $\sigma_A(a) \subset \sigma_B(a)$. If $\lambda \notin \sigma_B(a)$, then $a - \lambda \in A \cap B_{\text{inv}} = A_{\text{inv}}$ and hence $\lambda \notin \sigma_A(a)$ and the proof is complete. \hfill \qed

3.1 Spectrum Examples

Before continuing the formal development it may be useful to consider a few examples and some more properties of the spectrum of elements of a Banach algebra, $B$.

3.1.1 Finite Dimensional Examples

Exercise 3.1. Let $X$ be a finite set and $B = \mathbb{C}^X$ denote the functions, $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$. Clearly $f$ is invertible in $B$ iff $0 \notin f(X)$ in which case $(f)^{-1} = \frac{1}{f}$. Show that $1/f = p(f)$ for some $p \in \mathbb{C}[z]$ and hence $1/f$ is in the subalgebra of $B$ generated by $f$ and 1. Use this to conclude that $\sigma_B(f) = \sigma_{A(f,1)}(f) = f(X)$ where $A(f,1)$ is the algebra generated by $f$ and 1.
Remark 3.7 (Be careful in infinite dimensions). An easy consequence of Exercise 3.1 is that
\[ \sigma_B(f) = \sigma_{B_0}(f) = f(X) \]
where is \( B_0 \) is any unital sub-algebra of \( B \) which contains \( f \). This result does not necessarily extrapolate to infinite dimensional settings as demonstrated in Proposition 3.14 below, see also Theorem 3.12 and Remark 3.13.

A similar result holds for finite dimensional matrix algebras as well. In this case we will need to use the following Cayley Hamilton theorem.

Theorem 3.8 (Cayley Hamilton Theorem). Let \( B \) be an \( n \times n \) matrix and
\[ p(\lambda) := \det(\lambda I - B) = \sum_{j=0}^{n} p_j \lambda^j \]
be it characteristic polynomial. Then \( p(B) = 0 \) where \( 0 \) is the zero \( n \times n \) matrix.

Proof. This result is easy to understand if \( B \) has a basis \( \{v_j\}_{j=1}^{n} \) of eigenvectors with respective eigenvalues \( \{\lambda_j\}_{j=1}^{n} \). Since \( p(\lambda_j) = 0 \) for all \( j \) it follows that
\[ p(B) v_j = p(\lambda_j) v_j = 0 \]
for all \( j \) which implies \( p(B) \) is the zero matrix. For completeness we give a proof of the general case below.

For the general case, let \( \text{adj}(M) \) be the classical adjoint of \( M \) which is the transpose of the cofactor matrix. This matrix satisfies,
\[ \text{adj}(M) M = M \text{adj}(M) = \det(M) I. \]

Taking \( M = \lambda I - B \) in this equation shows,
\[ (\lambda I - B) \text{adj}(\lambda I - B) = p(\lambda) I = \sum_{j=0}^{n} p_j I \lambda^j. \]

Writing out
\[ \text{adj}(\lambda I - B) = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \lambda^k C_k \]
where \( C_k \in \mathbb{F}^{n \times n} \), we have
\[ \sum_{j=0}^{n} p_j I \lambda^j = (\lambda I - B) \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \lambda^k C_k \]
\[ = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \lambda^{k+1} C_k - \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \lambda^k BC_k \]
\[ = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \lambda^k C_{k-1} - \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \lambda^k BC_k \]
\[ = \lambda^n C_{n-1} + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \lambda^k [C_{k-1} - BC_k] - BC_0. \]

Comparing coefficients of \( \lambda^j \) then implies,
\[ p_n I = C_{n-1}, \]
\[ p_k I = [C_{k-1} - BC_k] \text{ for } 1 \leq k \leq n-1, \]
\[ p_0 I = -BC_0 \]
and hence
\[ B^n p_n I = B^n C_{n-1}, \]
\[ B^k p_k I = B^k [C_{k-1} - BC_k] \text{ for } 1 \leq k \leq n-1, \]
\[ p_0 I = -BC_0. \]

Summing these identities then shows,
\[ p(B) = p(P) I = B^n C_{n-1} + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} B^k [C_{k-1} - BC_k] - BC_0 \]
\[ = B^n C_{n-1} + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} B^k C_{k-1} - \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} B^{k+1} C_k - BC_0 \]
\[ = \sum_{k=1}^{n} B^k C_{k-1} - \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} B^{k+1} C_k = 0. \]

Lemma 3.9. Let \( B \) be an invertible \( n \times n \) matrix, then there exists a degree \( n-1 \) polynomial, \( q \), such that \( B^{-1} = q(B) \). In other words \( B^{-1} \) is in the sub-algebra of \( \text{End}(\mathbb{C}^n) \) generated by \( B \) and \( I \).

Proof. Let \( p \) be the characteristic polynomial of \( B \), i.e.
\[ p(\lambda) := \det(\lambda I - B) = \sum_{j=0}^{n} a_j \lambda^j = \lambda r(\lambda) + a_0 \]

where \(a_n = 1\), \(a_0 = (-1)^n\) det \(B\), and

\[ r(\lambda) := \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j \lambda^{j-1}. \]

By the Cayley Hamilton Theorem, which means explicitly that

\[ 0 = p(B) = Br(B) + a_0 I \]

and so

\[ B^{-1} = -\frac{1}{a_0} r(B) = q(B). \]

**Corollary 3.10.** Let \(n \in \mathbb{N}\) and suppose that \(B\) is any subalgebra of \(B(\mathbb{R}^n)\) which contains \(I\). (As usual \(\mathbb{F}\) is either \(\mathbb{R}\) or \(\mathbb{C}\)). Then for all \(S \in \mathcal{B}\), \(\sigma_B(S) = \sigma_{B(\mathbb{R}^n)}(S)\) is the set of eigenvalues of \(S\).

### 3.1.2 Function Space and Multiplication Operator Examples

**Lemma 3.11.** Let \(B := C(X)\) where \(X\) is a compact Hausdorff space. Then \(f \in B_{inv}\) if and only if \(f \notin \text{Ran}(f)\) and in this case \(f^{-1} = 1/f \in C^*(f, 1)\).

Consequently, \(\sigma_B(f) = f(X) = \sigma_{C^*(f, 1)}(f)\).

**Proof.** If \(f \in B_{inv}\) and \(g = f^{-1} \in B\), then \(f(x) g(x) = 1\) for all \(x \in X\) which implies \(f(x) \neq 0\) for all \(x\), i.e. \(0 \notin \text{Ran}(f)\).

Conversely if \(0 \notin \text{Ran}(f)\), then \(\varepsilon := \min_{x \in X}|f(x)| > 0\) and hence \(1/f \in B\) from which it follows that \(f \in B_{inv}\).

By the Weierstrass approximation theorem, there exists \(p_n \in \mathbb{C}[z, \bar{z}]\) such that \(p_n(z, \bar{z}) \to \frac{1}{f}\) uniformly on \(\varepsilon \leq |z| \leq ||f||\), and therefore

\[ \frac{1}{f} = ||f||_\infty - \lim_{n \to \infty} p_n(f, \bar{f}) \implies \frac{1}{f} \in C^*(f, 1) \]

We now are going to take \(X = S = \{z \in \mathbb{C} : |z| = 1\}\) in the next couple of results.

**Theorem 3.12.** Let \(B = C(S^1; \mathbb{C})\) and \(A\) be the Banach subalgebra (not \(C^*\)-subalgebra) generated by \(u(z) = z\), i.e.

\[ A = \{p(z) : p \in \mathbb{C}[z]\}. \]

Then

\[ A = \left\{ f \in B : \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(e^{i\theta}) e^{i n \theta} d\theta = 0 \text{ for all } n \in \mathbb{N} \right\}. \tag{3.1} \]

**Proof.** Let \(A_0\) denote the right side of Eq. (3.1). It is clear that if \(p(z) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} p_k z^k\) is a polynomial in \(z\), then

\[ \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} p(e^{i\theta}) e^{i n \theta} d\theta = \sum_{k=0}^{n} p_k \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} e^{i k \theta} e^{i n \theta} d\theta = 0 \text{ for all } n \in \mathbb{N} \]

which shows that \(p \in A_0\). As \(A_0\) is a closed subspace of \(B\) we may conclude that \(A \subseteq A_0\).

To prove the reverse inclusion, suppose that \(f \in A_0\) and let

\[ p_k := \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} f(e^{i\theta}) e^{-i k \theta} d\theta \text{ for all } k \in \mathbb{Z} \]

and then, for each \(n \in \mathbb{N}_0\), let

\[ p_n(z) := \sum_{|k| \leq n} p_k z^k = \sum_{k=0}^{n} p_k z^k \]

wherein we have used \(p_{-k} = 0\) for all \(k \in \mathbb{N}\) because \(f \in A\). By the theory of the Fourier series (using the Fejér kernel[2]) we know that

\[ q_n(z) := \frac{1}{N+1} \sum_{n=0}^{N} p_n(z) \to f(z) \text{ uniformly in } z, \]

which shows that \(f \in A\).

**Alternatively:** we can easily show, for any \(0 < r < 1\), that

\[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} p_k r^k z^k = \lim_{N \to \infty} \sum_{k=0}^{N} p_k r^k z^k \]

is a uniform limit and hence \(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} p_k r^k z^k \in A\). However it is well know that

\[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} p_k r^k z^k = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} p_k r^k z^k = (p_r * f)(z) \]

where \(p_r\) is the Poisson kernel[3]. This kernel had the property that \((p_r * f)(z) \to f(z) \text{ as } r \uparrow 1\), uniformly in \(z\), for any continuous function on \(S^1\). Thus we again find \(f \in A\). Incidentally, this proof shows that every \(f \in A\) is the boundary value of an analytic function in \(D = D(0, 1)\).
Remark 3.13. Notice that \( B = C(S^1; \mathbb{C}) = C^*(u, 1) \) while \( A \) is “holomorphic” subalgebra of \( B \), i.e. is the Banach algebra generated by \( u \).

Proposition 3.14. Continuing the notation above we have

\[
\sigma_B(u) = S^1 \subset B = \sigma_A(u).
\]

[See Conway \[17\], p.p. 205-207 and in particular Theorem 5.4 for some related general theory. We will come back to this example again in Example ?? below.]

Proof. We know that \( \sigma_B(u) = u(S^1) = S^1 \) by Lemma 3.11. Let us not work out \( \sigma_A(u) \). Since \( |u| \leq 1 \), we know that \( S^1 = \sigma_B(u) \subset \sigma_A(u) \subset D \). So to complete the proof we must show \( D \subset \sigma_A(u) \).

Let \( \lambda \in D \) and

\[
v_\lambda := (u - \lambda)^{-1} = \frac{1}{u - \lambda} \in B.
\]

For sake of contradiction assume that \( v_\lambda \in A \), i.e. there exists polynomials, \( \{p_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) such that

\[
p_n(z) \to v_\lambda(z) = \frac{1}{z - \lambda} \text{ as } n \to \infty.
\]

Under this assumption we find, by basic complex analysis, that

\[
2\pi i = \int_{S^1} \frac{1}{z - \lambda} \, dz = \lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{S^1} p_n(z) \, dz = \lim_{n \to \infty} 0 = 0
\]

which is a contradiction. Thus we have shown \( v_\lambda \notin A \) and hence \( \lambda \in \sigma_A(u) \). ■

The following definition is a special case of Definition 1.32 above.

Definition 3.15. If \( q \in L^\infty(\Omega, F, \mu) \), the essential range of \( q \) is the subset of \( \mathbb{C} \) defined by

\[
esran_\mu(q) = \{ w \in \mathbb{C} : \mu(q^{-1}(D(w, \varepsilon))) > 0 \text{ for all } \varepsilon > 0 \}.
\]

Here, as usual,

\[
D(w, \varepsilon) = \{ z \in \mathbb{C} : |z - w| < \varepsilon \}
\]

for all \( w \in \mathbb{C} \) and \( \varepsilon > 0 \).

Lemma 3.16. Suppose that \( (\Omega, F, \mu) \) is a measure space and \( f : \Omega \to \mathbb{C} \) is a measurable map such that \( \mu(f = 0) = 0 \) and \( M := \left\| \frac{1}{f} \right\|_{\infty} < \infty \). Then \( \mu(\{ |f| < 1/(2M) \}) = 0 \) and in particular \( 0 \notin \esran_{\mu}(f) \).

Proof. If \( M := \left\| \frac{1}{f} \right\|_{\infty} \) then for every \( C > M \), \( \mu(\left\{ |f| \geq C \right\}) = 0 \) or equivalently \( \mu(\{ |f| \leq 1/C \}) = 0 \). ■

Theorem 3.17. Suppose that \( (\Omega, F, \mu) \) is a measure space and \( f \in L^\infty(\mu) \). Then

\[
esran_{\mu}(f) = \sigma_{L^\infty(\mu)}(f) = \sigma_{C_\times(f,1)}(f).
\]

Proof. We start with the proof of the first equality in Eq. (3.2). If \( \lambda \notin \esran_{\mu}(f) \) iff there exists \( \varepsilon > 0 \) so that \( \mu(\{ |f - \lambda| < \varepsilon \}) = 0 \). Thus if \( \lambda \notin \esran_{\mu}(f) \), then \( \mu(\left\{ \frac{1}{f - \lambda} \right\} > \frac{1}{\varepsilon}) = 0 \) and hence,

\[
\left\| \frac{1}{f - \lambda} \right\|_{\infty} \leq \frac{1}{\varepsilon} < \infty
\]

which implies \( (f - \lambda)^{-1} = \frac{1}{f - \lambda} \) exists in \( L^\infty(\mu) \) and so \( \lambda \notin \sigma_{L^\infty(\mu)}(f) \).

Conversely, suppose that \( \lambda \notin \sigma_{L^\infty(\mu)}(f) \) so that \( (f - \lambda)^{-1} = g \) exists in \( L^\infty(\mu) \). Then, by definition, we have \( g(f - \lambda) = 1, \mu \text{-a.e. and therefore,} \)

\[
\left\| \frac{1}{f - \lambda} \right\|_{\infty} = \|g\|_{\infty} = M < \infty.
\]

By Lemma 3.16 we conclude that \( \mu(|f - \lambda| < 1/(2M)) = 0 \) and in particular \( \lambda \notin \esran_{\mu}(f) \).

As we automatically know that \( \sigma_{L^\infty(\mu)}(f) \subset \sigma_{C_\times(f,1)}(f) \), it suffices to show \( \sigma_{C_\times(f,1)}(f) \subset \sigma_{L^\infty(\mu)}(f) \). So suppose that \( \lambda \notin \sigma_{L^\infty(\mu)}(f) \) is \( \esran_{\mu}(f) \) which implies there exists \( \varepsilon > 0 \) such that \( \mu(|f - \lambda| < \varepsilon) = 0 \) and therefore,

\[
\varepsilon \leq |f - \lambda| \leq \|f\|_{\infty} + |\lambda| : \text{ M.a.e.}
\]

Following the proof of Lemma 3.16 there exists \( p_n \in \mathbb{C}[z, w] \) such that

\[
\lim_{n \to \infty} \left\| p_n(f - \lambda, f - \lambda) - \frac{1}{f - \lambda} \right\|_{\infty} = 0
\]

from which it follows that \( (f - \lambda)^{-1} \in C_\times(f,1) \). This shows \( \lambda \notin \sigma_{C_\times(f,1)}(f) \) and the proof is complete. ■

Remark 3.18. By Corollary ?? below or by the spectral theorem, if \( B \) is a unital commutative \( C^* \)-subalgebra of \( B(H) \), then

\[
\sigma_\times(T) = \sigma_B(T) = \sigma_{B(H)}(T)
\]

for all \( T \in B \). The real content here is the statement that if \( T \in B(H) \) is a normal operator which is invertible, then \( T^{-1} \in C_\times(I, T) \).

Theorem 3.19. Let \( (\Omega, F, \mu) \) be a measure space with no infinite atoms and \( 1 \leq p < \infty \) and let

\[
B = \{ Mf \in L^p(\mu) : f \in L^\infty(\mu) \} \subset B(L^p(\mu))
\]

be the multiplication function subalgebra of \( B(L^p(\mu)) \). If \( Mf \in B \) is invertible in \( B \) iff it is invertible in \( B(L^p(\mu)) \).
Proof. Suppose that $T = M_f^{-1}$ exists in $B\left(L^p(\mu)\right)$. Then for $g \in L^p(\mu)$ we have
\[ f \cdot Tg = Tfg \text{ a.e.} \quad (3.3) \]
If $\mu(|f| = 0) > 0$, then (by the no infinite atoms assumption) we may find $A \subset \{|f| = 0\}$ such that $0 < \mu(A) < \infty$. Taking $g = 1_A$ in Eq. (3.3) implies,
\[ f \cdot (T1_A) = 1_A \implies 1 = f \cdot (T1_A) = 0 \cdot (T1_A) = 0 \mu\text{-a.e. on } A, \]
which is a contradiction. Thus we conclude that in fact $\mu(f = 0) = 0$, and so from Eq. (3.3) it follows that $Tg = \frac{1}{f}g$ a.e. and moreover,
\[ \frac{1}{f}g_p \leq \|Tg\|_p \leq \|T\|_{ap} \|g\|_p \text{ for all } g \in L^p(\mu). \quad (3.4) \]
To finish the proof we need only show $1/f \in L^\infty(\mu)$.
If $0 < M < \infty$ and $\mu(|1/f| \geq M) > 0$, there exists $A \subset \{|1/f| \geq M\}$ such that $0 < \mu(A) < \infty$. Then taking $g = 1_A$ in Eq. (3.4) shows,
\[ M \|g\|_p \leq \frac{1}{f}g \leq \|T\|_{ap} \|g\|_p \]
and hence $M \leq \|T\|_{ap} < \infty$. As this is true for all $M$ such that $\mu(|1/f| \geq M) > 0$, we conclude that $\frac{1}{f} \leq \|T\|_{ap} < \infty$ and so $T = M_f^{-1} = M_{1/f} \in B$ and the proof is complete. \hfill \blacksquare

Corollary 3.20. Continuing the notation in Theorem 3.19 with $p = 2$, we have for every $f \in B = L^\infty(\mu)$ that
\[ \sigma_{B(L^2(\mu))}(M_f) = \sigma_B(M_f) = \sigma_{L^\infty(\mu)}(f) = \sigma_{C^*(f,1)}(f) = \text{essran}_\mu(f). \]
Moreover $C^*(f,1)$ and $C^*(M_f,1)$ are isomorphic as $C^*$-algebras and therefore,
\[ \sigma_{C^*(f,1)}(f) = \sigma_{C^*(M_f,1)}(M_f) = \text{essran}_\mu(f). \]

Proof. This is a combination of Theorems 2.58, 3.17 and 3.19. The details are left to the reader. \hfill \blacksquare

Example 3.21. Let $q = (q_1, \ldots, q_n)$ be a vector of bounded measurable functions on some probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mu)$. Let $B$ be the $C^*$-algebra generated by \{1\} $ Union \{M_{q_j}\}_{j=1}^n$. Then
\[ C(\text{essran}_\mu(q)) \ni f \mapsto M_{f\circ q} \in B \subset B\left(L^2(\mu)\right) \]
is an isometric $*$-isomorphism of Banach algebras. Therefore we conclude and in particular
\[ \sigma(M_{f\circ q}) = f(\text{essran}_\mu(q)). \]

3.1.3 Operators in a Banach Space Examples

For the next couple of definitions and results, let $X$ be a complex Banach space. Recall, by the open mapping theorem, if $T \in B(X)$ is invertible then $T^{-1}$ is bounded, see Lemma 2.9 and Corollary 2.10.

Definition 3.22. Let $X$ be a complex Banach space and $T \in B(X)$. The set, $\sigma_{ap}(T) \subset C$, of approximate eigenvalues of $T$ is defined by
\[ \sigma_{ap}(T) = \left\{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} : \inf_{\|\cdot\|_1} \|T - \lambda I\| \varepsilon x_1 = 0 \right\}. \]
Alternatively stated; $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ is $\sigma_{ap}(T)$ iff there exists $\{x_n\}_{n=1}^\infty \subset X$ with $\|x_n\|_X = 1$ such that $\lim_{n \to \infty} (T - \lambda)x_n = 0$. We call such a sequence $\{x_n\}_{n=1}^\infty$ an approximate eigensequence for $T$.

Proposition 3.23. If $T \in B(X)$, then $\sigma_{ap}(T)$ is a closed subset of $\sigma(T)$.

Proof. If $\lambda \notin \sigma(T)$, then $(T - \lambda I)^{-1}$ exists as a bounded operator and therefore with $M := \|(T - \lambda I)^{-1}\|_{ap} < \infty$ we have,
\[ \|(T - \lambda I)^{-1} x\|_\varepsilon \leq M \|x\| \forall \ x \in X. \]
Replacing $x$ by $(T - \lambda I)x$ in this equation shows,
\[ \|(T - \lambda I)x\| \geq \varepsilon \|x\| \forall \ x \in X \]
where $\varepsilon := M^{-1}$. This clearly shows $\lambda \notin \sigma_{ap}(T)$ and hence $\sigma_{ap}(T) \subset \sigma(T)$.

Moreover, if $\lambda \notin \sigma_{ap}(T)$, then there exists $\varepsilon > 0$ so that
\[ \|(T - \lambda I)x\| \geq \varepsilon \|x\| \forall \ x \in X. \]
So if $h \in \mathbb{C}$, then
\[ \|(T - (\lambda + h)I)x\| = \|(T - \lambda)x - hx\| \geq \|(T - \lambda)x\| - \|hx\| \geq \varepsilon \|x\| - |h| \|x\| = (\varepsilon - |h|) \|x\|. \]
Hence we conclude that if $|h| < \varepsilon$, then $(\lambda + h) \notin \sigma_{ap}(T)$ which shows $C \setminus \sigma_{ap}(T)$ is open and hence $\sigma_{ap}(T)$ is closed.

Example 3.24. Let $D := \{z \in \mathbb{C} : |z| < 1\}$ and $S : \ell^2 \to \ell^2$ be the shift operator, $S(\omega_1, \omega_2, \ldots) = (0, \omega_1, \omega_2, \ldots)$. Then
\[ \sigma_{ap}(S^*) = \sigma(S^*) = \sigma(S) = \mathbb{D} \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_{ap}(S) \subset S^1 \subset \mathbb{D} = \sigma(S). \]
and hence it can happen that $\sigma_{ap}(S) \not\subseteq \sigma(S)$. [See Exercise 3.2 where you are asked to show $\sigma_{ap}(S) = S^1$.]

**Proof.** It is easy to see that $S$ is an isometry, the adjoint, $S^*$, of $S$ is the left shift operator,

$$S^*(\omega_1, \omega_2, \ldots) = (\omega_2, \omega_3, \ldots),$$

and $\|S\|_{op} = 1 = \|S^*\|_{op}$. Thus we conclude that $\sigma(S) \subset \bar{D}$, and for any $\lambda \in D$,

$$\|(S - \lambda)\psi\| = \|S\psi - \lambda\psi\| \geq \|S\psi\| - |\lambda| \|\psi\| = (1 - |\lambda|) \|\psi\|.$$

The latter inequality shows $\sigma_{ap}(S) \subset \mathbb{C} \setminus D$.

For $\lambda \in D$, $v_\lambda := (1, \lambda, \lambda^2, \ldots) \in \ell^2$ and

$$S^*v_\lambda = S^*(1, \lambda, \lambda^2, \ldots) = \lambda(1, \lambda, \lambda^2, \ldots) = \lambda v_\lambda$$

which shows $D \subset \sigma_{ev}(S^*) \subset \sigma_{ap}(S^*)$. Because $\sigma_{ap}(S^*)$ is closed, $\bar{D} \subset \sigma_{ap}(S^*) \subset \sigma(S^*) \subset \bar{D}$, i.e.

$$\sigma_{ap}(S^*) = \sigma(S^*) = \bar{D} = \sigma(S).$$

Since we have already seen that $\sigma_{ap}(S) \subset \mathbb{C} \setminus D$, it follows that $\sigma_{ap}(S) \subset \bar{D} \setminus D = S^1$.

**Remark.** We may directly show that $S^1 \subset \sigma_{ap}(S^*)$ as follows. Let $\lambda \in S^1$ and then set $\omega^N := (1, \lambda, \lambda^2, \ldots, \lambda^N, 0, 0, \ldots)$. We then have $\|\omega^N\|_{\ell^2}^2 = N + 1$ while

$$S^*\omega^N - \lambda \omega^N = \lambda \omega^{N-1} - \lambda \omega^N = -\lambda^{N+1} e_{N+1}$$

and therefore,

$$(S^* - \lambda) \frac{\omega^N}{\sqrt{N+1}} = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{N+1}} \lambda^{N+1} e_{N+1} \to 0 \text{ as } N \to \infty$$

while $\|\omega^N/\sqrt{N+1}\|_{\ell^2} = 1$.

**Exercise 3.2.** Continuing then notation used in Example 3.24 show $\sigma_{ap}(S) = S^1$.

**Exercise 3.3.** Let $H = L^2([0,1], m)$, $g \in L^\infty([0,1])$, and define $T \in B(H)$ by

$$(Tf)(x) = \int_0^x g(y) f(y) \, dy.$$

Show;

1. $\sigma(T) = \{0\}$,
2. $\sigma_{ev}(T) \neq \emptyset$ if $m\{g = 0\} > 0$,
3. Show $\sigma_{ap}(T) = \{0\}$.

---

### 3.1.4 Spectrum of Normal Operators

**Exercise 3.4.** If $T$ is a subset of $H$, show $T^\perp = \text{span}(T)$ where span$(T)$ denotes all finite linear combinations of elements from $T$.

**Lemma 3.25.** If $H$ and $K$ be Hilbert spaces and $A \in L(H, K)$, then;

1. $\text{Nul}(A^*) = \text{Ran}(A)^\perp$, and
2. $\text{Ran}(A) = \text{Nul}(A^*)^\perp$.

3. If we further assume that $K = H$, and $V \subset H$ is an $A$ - invariant subspace (i.e. $AV \subset V$), then $V^\perp$ is $A^*$ - invariant.

**Proof.** 1. We have $y \in \text{Nul}(A^*) \iff A^*y = 0 \iff \langle y, Ah \rangle = \langle 0, h \rangle = 0$ for all $h \in H \iff y \in \text{Ran}(A)^\perp$.

2. By Exercise 3.4 $\text{Ran}(A) = \text{Ran}(A)^\perp$, and so $\text{Ran}(A) = \text{Ran}(A)^\perp = \text{Nul}(A^*)^\perp$.

3. Now suppose that $K = H$ and $AV \subset V$. If $y \in V^\perp$ and $x \in V$, then

$$\langle A^*y, x \rangle = \langle y, Ax \rangle = 0 \text{ for all } x \in V \implies A^*y \in V^\perp.$$

For this section we always assume that $H$ is a separable complex Hilbert space.

**Lemma 3.26.** If $C \in B(H)$ and $\langle C\psi, \psi \rangle = 0$ for all $\psi \in H$, then $C = 0$.

**Proof.** If $\psi, \varphi \in H$, then

$$0 = \langle C(\psi + \varphi), \psi + \varphi \rangle = \langle C\psi, \psi \rangle + \langle C\psi, \varphi \rangle + \langle C\varphi, \psi \rangle + \langle C\varphi, \varphi \rangle = \langle C\psi, \varphi \rangle + \langle C\varphi, \psi \rangle.$$

Replacing $\psi$ by $i\psi$ in this identity also shows

$$0 = i[(\langle C\psi, \varphi \rangle - \langle C\varphi, \psi \rangle)]$$

which combined with the previous equation easily gives, $\langle C\psi, \varphi \rangle = 0$. Since $\psi, \varphi \in H$ are arbitrary we must have $C = 0$.

**Lemma 3.27.** If $C \in B(H)$, then;

1. $C^* = C$ iff $\langle C\psi, \psi \rangle \in \mathbb{R}$ for all $\psi \in H$ and
2. $C^* = -C$ iff $\langle C\psi, \psi \rangle \in i\mathbb{R}$ for all $\psi \in H$. 

Proof. If $C = C^*$, then
\[ \langle C\psi, \psi \rangle = \langle \psi, C\psi \rangle = \langle C^*\psi, \psi \rangle = \langle C\psi, \psi \rangle \]
which $\langle C\psi, \psi \rangle \in \mathbb{R}$. Conversely if $\langle C\psi, \psi \rangle \in \mathbb{R}$ for all $\psi \in H$ then
\[ \langle C\psi, \psi \rangle = \overline{\langle C\psi, \psi \rangle} = \langle \psi, C\psi \rangle = \langle C^*\psi, \psi \rangle \]
from which it follows that $\langle (C - C^*)\psi, \psi \rangle = 0$ for all $\psi \in H$. Therefore, by Lemma 3.26 $C - C^* = 0$ which completes the proof of item 1. Item 2. follows from item 1. since, $C^* = -C$ iff $(iC)^2 = iC$ iff $(iC\psi, \psi) \in \mathbb{R}$ iff $\langle C\psi, \psi \rangle \in i\mathbb{R}$.

Definition 3.28 (Normal operators). An operator $A \in B(H)$ is normal iff $[A, A^*] = 0$, i.e. $A^*A = AA^*$.

Lemma 3.29. An operator $A \in B(H)$ is normal iff
\[ \|A\psi\| = \|A^*\psi\| \quad \forall \psi \in H. \] \hspace{1cm} (3.5)

Proof. If $A$ is normal and $\psi \in H$, then
\[ \|A\psi\|^2 = \langle A^*A\psi, \psi \rangle = \langle AA^*\psi, \psi \rangle = \langle A^*\psi, A^*\psi \rangle = \|A^*\psi\|^2. \]
Conversely if Eq. (3.5) holds and $C := [A, A^*] = AA^* - A^*A$, then the above computation shows $\langle C\psi, \psi \rangle = 0$ for all $\psi \in H$. Thus by Lemma 3.26 $0 = C = [A, A^*]$, i.e. $A$ is normal.

Corollary 3.30. If $A \in B(H)$ is a normal operator, then $\text{Nul}(A) = \text{Nul}(A^*)$ and $\sigma_{ev}(A^*) = \text{cong}(\sigma_{ev}(A))$ where for any $\Omega \subset \mathbb{C}$,
\[ \text{cong}(\Omega) = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} : \lambda \in \Omega \}. \]

Proof. If $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$, then $\text{Nul}(A - \lambda) = \text{Nul}(A^* - \bar{\lambda})$, i.e. $Au = \lambda u$ iff $A^*u = \bar{\lambda}u$.

Lemma 3.31. If $B, C \in B(H)$ are commuting self-adjoint operators, then
\[ \|(B + iC)\psi\|^2 = \|B\psi\|^2 + \|C\psi\|^2 \quad \forall \psi \in H. \]

Proof. Simple manipulations show,
\[ \|(B + iC)\psi\|^2 = \|B\psi\|^2 + \|C\psi\|^2 + 2\text{Re}\langle B\psi, iC\psi \rangle \\
= \|B\psi\|^2 + \|C\psi\|^2 + 2\text{Im}\langle CB\psi, \psi \rangle \\
= \|B\psi\|^2 + \|C\psi\|^2 \]
where the last equality follows from Lemma 3.27 because,
\[ (CB)^* = B^*C = BC = CB. \]

3.1 Spectrum Examples 47

Remark 3.32. Here is another way to understand Lemma 3.29 If $A$ is normal then $A = B + iC$ where
\[ B = \frac{1}{2}(A + A^*) \quad \text{and} \quad C = \frac{1}{2i}(A - A^*) \]
are two commuting self-adjoint operators. Therefore by Lemma 3.31
\[ \|A\psi\|^2 = \frac{1}{4}\left[\|(A + A^*)\psi\|^2 + \|(A - A^*)\psi\|^2\right] \]
which is symmetric under the interchange of $A$ with $A^*$.

Remark 3.33. Suppose that $a, b$ are commuting elements of $\mathcal{A}$, then $ab \in \mathcal{A}_{inv}$ iff $a, b \in \mathcal{A}_{inv}$. More generally if $a_i \in \mathcal{A}$ for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$ are commuting elements then $\prod_{i=1}^n a_i \in \mathcal{A}_{inv}$ iff $a_i \in \mathcal{A}_{inv}$ for all $i$. To prove this suppose that $c := ab \in \mathcal{A}_{inv}$, then $c$ commutes with both $a$ and $b$ and hence $c^{-1}$ also commutes with $a$ and $b$. Therefore $1 = (c^{-1}a)b = b(c^{-1}a)$ which shows that $b \in \mathcal{A}_{inv}$ and $b^{-1} = c^{-1}a$. Similarly one shows that $a \in \mathcal{A}_{inv}$ as well and $a^{-1} = c^{-1}b$. The more general version is easily proved in the same way or by induction on $n$.

Lemma 3.34. Suppose that $A \in B(H)$ is a normal operator, i.e. $[A, A^*] = 0$. Then $\sigma(A) = \sigma_{ap}(A)$ and
\[ \sigma(A) = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} : 0 \in \sigma((A - \lambda)^*(A - \lambda)) \}. \] \hspace{1cm} (3.6)
[In other words, $(A - \lambda)$ is invertible iff $(A - \lambda)^*(A - \lambda)$ is invertible.]

Proof. By Proposition 3.23 $\sigma_{ap}(A) \subset \sigma(A)$. If $\lambda \notin \sigma_{ap}(A)$, then there exists $\varepsilon > 0$ so that
\[ \varepsilon := \inf_{\|\psi\|=1} \|(A - \lambda)\psi\| > 0 \]
or equivalently
\[ \|(A - \lambda)\psi\| \geq \varepsilon \|\psi\| \quad \forall \psi \in H. \]
As $A - \lambda I$ is normal we also now (see Lemma 3.29) that
\[ \|(A - \lambda I)^*\psi\| = \|(A - \lambda I)\psi\| \geq \varepsilon \|\psi\| \quad \forall \psi \in H \]
and in particular,
\[ \text{Nul}(A - \lambda I) = \{0\} = \text{Nul}((A - \lambda I)^*). \]

By Corollary 2.10 $\text{Ran}(A - \lambda I)$ is closed. Using these comments along with Lemma 3.25 allows us to conclude,
\[ \text{Ran}(A - \lambda I) = \overline{\text{Ran}(A - \lambda I)} = \text{Nul}((A - \lambda I)^*) = \{0\} = H \]
and hence $A - \lambda I$ is invertible and therefore $\lambda \not\in \sigma (A)$. Thus we have shown $\sigma (A) \subset \sigma_{ap} (A)$ and hence $\sigma_{ap} (A) = \sigma (A)$.

We now prove Eq. (3.6). First note that because $A$ is normal, $A - \lambda I$ is normal and also $A - \lambda I$ is invertible if $(A - \lambda)^* I$ is invertible. Therefore by Remark 3.33 $(A - \lambda)^* (A - \lambda)$ iff both $(A - \lambda)^* I$ and $(A - \lambda - I)$ are invertible if $A - \lambda I$ is invertible. This is the contrapositive of Eq. (3.6).

Example 3.35. Let $S$ be the shift operator as in Example 3.24. Then $S^* S = I$ while $S^* S \neq I$ since

$$SS^* (\omega_1, \omega_2, \omega_3, \ldots) = (0, \omega_2, \omega_3, \ldots)$$

Thus $S$ is not normal and by Example 3.24, $\sigma_{ap} (S) \subset \sigma (S)$. Moreover, $S^* S$ is invertible even though neither $S$ nor $S^*$ is invertible, i.e. $0 \in \sigma (S)$ while $0 \notin \sigma (S^* S)$. This example shows that we cannot drop the assumption that $[a, b] = 0$ in Remark 3.33.

Lemma 3.36. If $A \in B (H)$ is self-adjoint (i.e. $A = A^*$), then $\sigma (A) \subset \mathbb{R}$. This is generalized in Lemma 4.3.

Proof. Let $\lambda = \alpha + i \beta$ with $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}$, then

$$\|(A + \alpha \psi)\|^2 = \|(A + \alpha \psi)\|^2 + |\beta|^2 \|\psi\|^2 + 2 \Re (\langle A + \alpha \psi, i \beta \psi \rangle)
= \|(A + \alpha \psi)\|^2 + |\beta|^2 \|\psi\|^2 \geq |\beta|^2 \|\psi\|^2$$

(3.7)

wherein we have used Lemma 3.27 to conclude, $\Re (\langle A + \alpha \psi, i \beta \psi \rangle) = 0$. [Equation (3.7) is a simply a special case of Lemma 3.31.] Equation (3.7) along with Lemma 3.34 shows that $\lambda \notin \sigma (A)$ if $\beta \neq 0$, i.e. $\sigma (A) \subset \mathbb{R}$.

Remark 3.37. It is not true that $\sigma (A) \subset \mathbb{R}$ implies $A = A^*$. For example, let

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

on $C^2$, then $\sigma (A) = \{0\}$ yet $A \neq A^*$. This result is true if we require $A$ to be normal.

3.2 Basic Properties of $\sigma (a)$

Definition 3.38. The resolvent (operators) of $a$ is the function,

$$\rho (a) \ni \lambda \mapsto R_\lambda = (a - \lambda)^{-1} \in \mathcal{A}_{inv}$$

Lemma 3.39 (Resolvent Identity). If $a \in \mathcal{A}$ and $\mu, \lambda \in \rho (a)$, then

$$R_\lambda - R_\mu = (\lambda - \mu) R_\lambda R_\mu$$

(3.8)

and in particular by interchanging the roles of $\mu$ and $\lambda$ it follows that $[R_\lambda, R_\mu] = 0$.

Proof. Apply Eq. (2.7) with $b = (a - \lambda)$ and $c = (a - \mu)$ to find

$$R_\lambda - R_\mu = R_\lambda [(a - \mu) - (a - \lambda)] R_\mu = R_\lambda (\lambda - \mu) R_\mu = (\lambda - \mu) R_\lambda R_\mu.$$

Equation (3.8) is easily remembered by the following heuristic;

$$R_\lambda - R_\mu = \frac{1}{a - \lambda} - \frac{1}{a - \mu} = (a - \mu) (a - \lambda) (a - \lambda) (a - \mu) = (a - \mu) R_\lambda R_\mu.$$

Corollary 3.40. Let $\mathcal{A}$ be a complex Banach algebra with identity and let $a \in \mathcal{A}$. Then the function, $\rho (a) \ni \lambda \mapsto R_\lambda \in \mathcal{A}$ is analytic with $\frac{d}{d\lambda} R_\lambda = R_\lambda^2$ and $\|R_\lambda\| \to 0$ as $\lambda \to \infty$.

Proof. For $h \in \mathbb{C}$ small,

$$R_{\lambda + h} - R_\lambda = (\lambda + h - \lambda) R_{\lambda + h} R_\lambda = h R_{\lambda + h} R_\lambda$$

and therefore,

$$\frac{1}{h} (R_{\lambda + h} - R_\lambda) = R_{\lambda + h} R_\lambda \to R_\lambda^2$$

as $h \to 0$

wherein we have used Corollary 2.16 in order to see that $R_{\lambda + h} \to R_\lambda$ as $h \to 0$. Since

$$R_\lambda = (a - \lambda)^{-1} = -\lambda^{-1} (1 - \lambda^{-1} a)^{-1},$$

if $|\lambda| > ||a||$ (i.e. $||\lambda^{-1} a|| < 1$) it follows that

$$\|R_\lambda\| = \frac{1}{|\lambda|} \|(1 - \lambda^{-1} a)^{-1}\| \leq \frac{1}{|\lambda|} \|1 - ||\lambda^{-1} a||\| = O \left( \frac{1}{|\lambda|} \right) \to 0 \text{ as } |\lambda| \to \infty.$$

Corollary 3.41. Let $\mathcal{A}$ be a complex Banach algebra with unit, $1 \neq 0$ (as we have assumed that $\|1\| = 1$.) Then $\rho (a) \neq \emptyset$ for every $a \in \mathcal{A}$.

Proof. If $\rho (a) = \emptyset$, then $R_\lambda = (a - \lambda)^{-1}$ is analytic on all of $\mathbb{C}$ and moreover $\|R_\lambda\| = O \left( \frac{1}{|\lambda|} \right)$ as $\lambda \to \infty$. Therefore by Liouville’s theorem (Corollary 1.12), $R_\lambda$ is constant and in fact must be $0$ by letting $\lambda \to \infty$. Therefore

$$1 = R_\lambda (a - \lambda) = 0 (a - \lambda) = 0$$

which is a contradiction and therefore $\rho (a) \neq \emptyset$.

Remark. if we only want to use the classical Liouville’s theorem, just apply it to $\lambda \mapsto \xi (R_\lambda)$ for all $\xi \in \mathcal{A}^*$ to find $\xi (R_\lambda) = \xi (R_0)$. As this holds for all $\xi \in \mathcal{A}^*$ it follows again that $R_\lambda = R_0$. 

Page: 48  job: 241Functional_2020s  macro: svmonob.cls  date/time: 4-Feb-2020/11:39
Theorem 3.42 (Spectral Mapping Theorem). If \( p : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \) is a polynomial and \( a \in \mathcal{A} \) then \( p(\sigma(a)) = \sigma(p(a)) \).

**Proof.** Let \( p \) be a non-constant polynomial (otherwise there is nothing to prove) and let \( \mu \in \mathbb{C} \) be given. Then factor \( p(\mu) = \mu \) as
\[
p(\mu) - \mu = \alpha (\mu - \lambda_1) \cdots (\mu - \lambda_n)
\]
where \( \alpha \in \mathbb{C}^\times \) and \( \{\lambda_i\}_{i=1}^n \subset \mathbb{C} \) are the solutions (with multiplicity) to \( p(\lambda) = \mu \). Since
\[
p(\mu) - \mu = \alpha (\mu - \lambda_1) \cdots (\mu - \lambda_n)
\]
we may conclude using Remark 3.33 that \( \mu \in \sigma(p(a)) \) iff \( \lambda_i \in \sigma(a) \) for some \( i \), i.e. iff \( \mu = p(\lambda) \) for some \( \lambda \in \sigma(a) \), i.e. iff \( \mu \in \sigma(p(a)) \).

Corollary 3.43. If \( p \in \mathbb{C}[z] \) and \( a \in \mathcal{A} \), then
\[
r(p(a)) = \sup_{\lambda \in \sigma(a)} |p(\lambda)| = \|p\|_{\infty, \sigma(a)}
\]
and in particular, \( r(a^n) = r(a)^n \) for all \( n \in \mathbb{N} \).

**Proof.** Using Theorem 3.42 and the definition of \( r \),
\[
r(p(a)) = \sup \{ |z| : z \in \sigma(p(a)) \} = \sup \{ |p(\lambda)| : \lambda \in \sigma(a) \}
\]
which proves Eq. (3.9). Taking \( p(z) = z^n \) in this equation shows,
\[
r(a^n) = \sup \{ |\lambda|^n : \lambda \in \sigma(a) \} = \sup \{ |\lambda| : \lambda \in \sigma(a) \}
\]
and hence \( r(a^n) = r(a)^n \).

Corollary 3.44. The function, \( \lambda \mapsto (1 - \lambda a)^{-1} \), is analytic on \( |\lambda| < 1/r(a) \) and moreover admits the power series representation,
\[
(1 - \lambda a)^{-1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \lambda^n a^n
\]
which is valid for \( |\lambda| < 1/r(a) \).

**Proof.** If \( |\lambda| \|a\| = |\lambda a| < 1 \), we know that Eq. (3.10) is valid and hence \( (1 - \lambda a)^{-1} \) is analytic near 0 as well, see Remark 1.11. Alternatively we may compute by the chain rule that
\[
\frac{d}{d\lambda} (1 - \lambda a)^{-1} = (1 - \lambda a)^{-1} a (1 - \lambda a)^{-1}.
\]
For \( \lambda \neq 0 \),
\[
(1 - \lambda a)^{-1} = \lambda^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{\lambda} - a \right)^{-1} = \lambda^{-1} R_{\lambda a}^{-1}
\]
which is valid provided \( 1/\lambda \in \rho(a) \) which will hold if \( \frac{1}{|\lambda|} > r(a) \), i.e. if \( 0 < |\lambda| < 1/r(a) \). So we have shown \( (1 - \lambda a)^{-1} \) is analytic near 0 and also, by Corollary 3.40 for \( 0 < |\lambda| < 1/r(a) \). Thus it follows that \( (1 - \lambda a)^{-1} \) is analytic on for \( |\lambda| < 1/r(a) \) and hence by Theorem 1.10 the expansion in Eq. (3.10) is valid for \( |\lambda| < 1/r(a) \).

Corollary 3.45. The spectral radius \( r(a) \) may be computed by taking the following limit,
\[
r(a) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \|a^n\|^{1/n}.
\]

**Proof.** By Corollary 3.43,
\[
r(a)^n = r(a^n) \leq \|a^n\| \implies r(a) \leq \|a^n\|^{1/n}.
\]
Passing to the limit as \( n \to \infty \) in this inequality shows
\[
r(a) = \liminf_{n \to \infty} \|a^n\|^{1/n}.
\]
For the opposite we conclude from Eq. (3.10) that \( \lim_{n \to \infty} \|(\lambda a)^n\| = 0 \) when \( |\lambda| < 1/r(a) \). This assertion then implies,
\[
|\lambda| \limsup_{n \to \infty} \|a^n\|^{1/n} = \limsup_{n \to \infty} \|(\lambda a)^n\|^{1/n} \leq 1 \forall |\lambda| < 1/r(a)
\]
and hence \( \limsup_{n \to \infty} \|a^n\|^{1/n} \leq r(a) \) which along with Eq. (3.11) completes the proof.

Exercise 3.5 (Compare with Proposition 7.19). Let \( \mathcal{B} \) be a complex Banach algebra with unit, then for any \( a, b \in \mathcal{B} \) which commute, show;

1. \( r(ab) \leq r(a) r(b) \) and
2. \( r(a+b) \leq r(a) + r(b) \).

Proposition 3.46 (Optional). If \( a \in \mathcal{A} \) and \( \lambda \in \rho(a) \), then
\[
\|(a - \lambda)^{-1}\| \geq r \left( (a - \lambda)^{-1} \right) \geq \frac{1}{\text{dist} (\lambda, \sigma(a))}.
\]
Proof. If \( \lambda \in \rho (a) \) and \( \beta \in \mathbb{C} \), then

\[
(a - (\lambda + \beta)) = (a - \lambda) - \beta = (a - \lambda) \left[ I - \beta (a - \lambda)^{-1} \right]
\]

is invertible if

\[
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left\| [\beta (a - \lambda)^{-1}]^{n} \right\| < \infty.
\]

The latter condition is implied by requiring \( \limsup_{n \to \infty} \left\| [\beta (a - \lambda)^{-1}]^{n} \right\|^{1/n} < 1 \), i.e.

\[
|\beta| \limsup_{n \to \infty} \left\| (a - \lambda)^{-1} \right\|^{1/n} < 1
\]

\[
\iff |\beta| < \limsup_{n \to \infty} \left\| (a - \lambda)^{-1} \right\|^{-1/n} = \frac{1}{r ((a - \lambda)^{-1})}
\]

and hence

\[
\text{dist} (\lambda, \sigma (a)) \geq \frac{1}{r ((a - \lambda)^{-1})} \iff r ((a - \lambda)^{-1}) \geq \frac{1}{\text{dist} (\lambda, \sigma (a))}.
\]
Holomorphic and Continuous Functional Calculus

In this chapter we wish to consider two methods for defining functions of a given element of a Banach algebra, $B$. The first method allows us to define $f(a)$ for almost any $a \in B$ provided that $f$ is analytic on an open neighborhood of the spectrum of $a$. Later we will specialize to the case where $B$ is a $C^\ast$-algebra and $a \in B$ is Hermitian. In this case we will make sense of $f(a)$ for any bounded measurable function, $f : \sigma(a) \to \mathbb{C}$.

4.1 Holomorphic (Riesz) Functional Calculus

The material in this section was probably taken from M. Taylor [75, pages 576-578]. Let $B$ be a unital Banach algebra and $a \in B$. Suppose that $\sigma(a)$ is a disjoint union of sets $\{\Sigma_k\}_{k=1}^n$ which are surrounded by contours $\{C_k\}_{k=1}^n$ and $\Omega$ is an open subset of $\mathbb{C}$ which contains the contours and their interiors, see Figure 4.1.

Fig. 4.1. The spectrum of $a$ is in red, the counter clockwise contours are in black, and $\Omega$ is the union of the grey sets.

Given a holomorphic function, $f$, on $\Omega$ we let

$$f(a) := \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{C_1} \frac{f(z)}{z-a} \, dz := \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{C_k} \frac{f(z)}{z-a} \, dz,$$

where $\frac{1}{z-a} := (z-a)^{-1}$ and $C = \bigcup_{k=1}^n C_k$.

Let us observe that $f(a)$ is independent of the possible choices of contours $C$ as described above. One way to prove this is to choose $\ell \in B(X)^\ast$ and notice that

$$\ell(f(a)) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_C f(z) \ell\left((z-a)^{-1}\right) \, dz$$

where $f(z) \ell\left((z-a)^{-1}\right)$ is a holomorphic function on $\Omega \setminus \sigma(a)$. Therefore

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_C f(z) \ell\left((z-a)^{-1}\right) \, dz$$

remains constant over deformations of $C$ which remain in $\Omega \setminus \sigma(a)$. As $\ell$ is arbitrary it follows that

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_C \frac{f(z)}{z-a} \, dz$$

remains constant over such deformations as well.

**Theorem 4.1.** The map $H(\Omega) \ni f \to f(a) \in B$ is an algebra homomorphism satisfying the consistency criteria; if $f(z) = \sum_{m=0}^N c_m z^m$ is a polynomial then

$$f(a) = \sum_{m=0}^N c_m a^m.$$

More generally, $\rho > 0$ is chosen so that $r(a) < \rho$ and $f \in H(D(0,\rho))$, then

$$f(a) = \sum_{m=0}^\infty \frac{f^{(m)}(0)}{m!} a^m. \tag{4.1}$$

**Proof.** It is clear that $H(\Omega) \ni f \to f(a) \in B$ is linear in $f$. Now suppose that $f, g \in H(\Omega)$ and for each $k$ let $\tilde{C}_k$ be another contour around $\Sigma_k$ which is inside $C_k$ for each $k$. Then

$$f(a) g(a) = \left(\frac{1}{2\pi i}\right)^2 \sum_{k,l=1}^n \oint_{C_k} \frac{f(z)}{z-a} \, dz \oint_{\tilde{C}_l} \frac{g(\zeta)}{\zeta-a} \, d\zeta$$

$$= \left(\frac{1}{2\pi i}\right)^2 \sum_{k,l=1}^n \oint_{C_k} dz \oint_{\tilde{C}_l} d\zeta \frac{f(z)}{z-a} \frac{g(\zeta)}{\zeta-a}$$

$$= \left(\frac{1}{2\pi i}\right)^2 \sum_{k,l=1}^n \oint_{C_k} dz \oint_{\tilde{C}_l} d\zeta \frac{f(z)}{z-a} \frac{g(\zeta)}{\zeta-a}$$

$$= \left(\frac{1}{2\pi i}\right)^2 \sum_{k,l=1}^n A_{kl}$$
Using the resolvent formula,
\[ \frac{1}{z - a} - \frac{1}{\zeta - a} = \frac{\zeta - z}{(z - a)(\zeta - a)}, \]
we find (using Fubini-Tonelli) that
\[ A = \frac{1}{z - a} \]
and therefore,\[ Eq. (4.2) \]simplifies to
\[ \oint_{C_l} \frac{f(z)}{z - a} \frac{g(\zeta)}{\zeta - a} \, d\zeta \]
for \( z \in C_k, \) \( \zeta \to g(\zeta) \frac{1}{\zeta - z} \) is analytic for \( \zeta \) inside \( \tilde{C}_l \) no matter the \( l \) and therefore,
\[ \oint_{C_l} d\zeta g(\zeta) \frac{1}{\zeta - z} = 0 \]  \hspace{1cm} (4.3)
and Eq. (4.2) simplifies to
\[ A_{kl} = -\oint_{C_l} d\zeta g(\zeta) \frac{1}{\zeta - z} \]
If \( k \neq l, \) we still have \( z \to \frac{f(z)}{z - a} \) is analytic inside of \( C_k \) and for each \( \zeta \in \tilde{C}_l \) and so
\[ \oint_{C_k} dz \frac{f(z)}{\zeta - z} = 0 \]
which implies \( A_{kl} = 0. \) On the other hand when \( k = l \)
\[ \oint_{C_k} dz \frac{f(z)}{\zeta - z} = -2\pi i f(\zeta) \] for all \( \zeta \in \tilde{C}_k. \)
Hence we have shown,
\[ A_{k,k} = 2\pi i \cdot \oint_{C_l} d\zeta g(\zeta) \frac{f(\zeta)}{\zeta - a} \]
and therefore,
\[ f(a) g(a) = \left( \frac{1}{2\pi i} \right)^2 \sum_{k=1}^{n} A_{k,k} \]
\[ = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{C_l} d\zeta g(\zeta) \frac{f(\zeta)}{\zeta - a} = (f \cdot g)(a) \]
which shows that \( a \to f(a) \) is an algebra homomorphism.
If \( f \in H(D(0, \rho)), \) then for every \( 0 < r < \rho, \) there exists \( C'(r) < \infty \) such that \[ f^{(m)}(0) = \frac{r^m}{m!} \]
and hence
\[ \limsup_{m \to \infty} \left\| \frac{f^{(m)}(0)}{m!} \right\|^{1/m} \leq \limsup_{m \to \infty} \left\| C'(r)^{1/m} \left( \frac{\|a^m\|}{r^m} \right)^{1/m} \right\| \]
It now follows by the root test that the sum in Eq. (4.1) is absolutely convergent.
[Technically we could skip this convergence argument but it is nice to verify directly that the sum is convergent.]
We now verify the equality in Eq. (4.1). Suppose that \( f \in H(D(0, \rho)) \) where \( \rho > r(a). \) From Corollary 3.44, we know that
\[ \frac{1}{1 - \lambda a} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \lambda^n a^n \]
is convergent for \( |\lambda| < \frac{1}{r(a)} \) and therefore
\[ \frac{1}{z - a} = \frac{1}{z - a/r} = \frac{1}{z} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{r}{z} \right)^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n z^{-(n+1)} \]
for \( |z| > r(a). \)
Let \( r \in (r(a), \rho) \) as above and let \( C \) be the contour, \( z = re^{i\theta} \) with \(-\pi \leq \theta \leq \pi. \)
Then
\[ f(a) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{C} f(z) \frac{dz}{z - a} = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{C} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n z^{-(n+1)} f(z) \frac{dz}{z - a} \]
where, by the residue theorem or by differentiating the Cauchy integral formula,
\[ c_n = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{C} z^{-(n+1)} f(z) \frac{dz}{z - a} = \frac{f^{(n)}(0)}{n!}. \]

**Theorem 4.2 (Spectral Mapping Theorem).** Keeping the same notation as above, \( f(\sigma(a)) = \sigma(f(a)). \)

**Proof.** Suppose that \( \mu \in \sigma(a) \) and define
Proposition 4.3. If \( B \) is a \( C^* \)-algebra with unit, then \( r(a) = \|a\| \) whenever \( a \in B \) is normal, i.e. \( [a, a^*] = 0 \). We will give another proof of this result in Lemmas ?? and ?? below that \( r(a) = \|a\| \) when \( a \) is a normal element of \( B \).

Proof. We start by showing, for \( a \in B \) which is normal and \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), that
\[
\|a^{2n}\| = \|a\|^{2n}.
\]
We will prove Eq. (4.4) by induction on \( n \in \mathbb{N} \). By Lemma 2.64, we know that \( \|b^2\| = \|b\|^2 \) whenever \( b \in B \) is normal. Taking \( b = a \) gives Eq. (4.4) for \( n = 1 \) and then applying the identity with \( b = a^2 \) while using the induction hypothesis shows,
\[
\|a^{2n+1}\| = \|a^2\|^n = \left(\|a\|^2\right)^n = \|a\|^{2n+1} \quad \text{for} \quad n \in \mathbb{N}.
\]

The statement that \( r(a) = \|a\| \) now follows from Eq. (4.4) and Corollary 3.45 which allows us to compute \( r(a) \) as
\[
r(a) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \|a^{2n}\|^{1/2n} = \lim_{n \to \infty} ||a|| = \|a\|.
\]

Example 4.4. Let \( N \) be an \( n \times n \) complex matrix such that \( N_{ij} = 0 \) if \( i \neq j \), i.e. \( N \) is upper triangular with zeros along the diagonal. Then \( \sigma(N) = \{0\} \) while \( \|N\| \neq 0 \). Thus \( r(N) = 0 < \|N\| \). On the other hand, \( N^n = 0 \) so \( \lim_{n \to \infty} \|N^n\|^{1/n} = 0 = r(N) \).

Lemma 4.5 (Reality). Let \( B \) be a unital \( C^* \)-algebra. If \( a \in B \) is Hermitian, then \( \sigma(a) \subset \mathbb{R} \). [This generalizes Lemma 3.39 above. Also see Lemma 7.29 below for related results.]

Proof. We must show \( a - \lambda \in B_{\text{ne}} \) whenever \( \text{Im} \lambda \neq 0 \). We first consider \( \lambda = i \). For sake of contradiction, suppose that \( i \in \sigma(a) \). Then by the spectral mapping Theorem 3.44 with \( p(z) = \lambda - iz \) implies
\[
\lambda + 1 = p(i) \in \sigma(p(a)) = \sigma(\lambda - ia) \quad \text{for all} \quad \lambda \in \mathbb{R}.
\]
Therefore using the fact that \( r(x) \leq \|x\| \) for all \( x \in B \) along with the \( C^* \)-identity shows,
\[
(\lambda + 1)^2 \leq \|r(\lambda - ia)\| = \|\lambda - ia\|^2
\]
wherein
\[
\|\lambda - ia\|^2 \leq \|\lambda - ia\|^2 \leq \lambda^2 + \|a\|^2 \quad \text{for all} \quad \lambda \in \mathbb{R}.
\]

Combining the last two displayed equation leads to the nonsensical inequality, \( 2\lambda + 1 \leq \|a\|^2 \) for all \( \lambda \in \mathbb{R} \), and we have arrived at the desired contradiction and hence \( i \notin \sigma(a) \).

For general \( \lambda = x + iy \) with \( y \neq 0 \), we have then
\[
a - \lambda = a - x - iy = y^{-1}(a - x) - i
\]
which is invertible by step 1, with \( a \) replaced by \( y^{-1}(a - x) \) which shows \( \lambda \notin \sigma(a) \). As this was valid for all \( \lambda \) with \( \text{Im} \lambda \neq 0 \), we have shown \( \sigma(a) \subset \mathbb{R} \). 

\small
\footnote{More directly,}
\[\lambda + 1 - (\lambda - ia) = 1 + ia = i(a - i)\]
is not invertible by assumption and hence \( \lambda + 1 \in (\lambda - ia) \).
Corollary 4.6. If $a \in \mathcal{B}$ is a Hermitian element of a unital $C^*$-algebra, then
\[ \|p(a)\| = \sup_{x \in \sigma(a)} |p(x)| \quad \forall p \in \mathbb{C}[x]. \]

Proof. Since $p(a)$ is normal, it follows that $\|p(a)\| = r(p(a))$ which by the spectral mapping theorem may be computed as,
\[ r(p(a)) = \max_{\lambda \in \sigma(p(a))} |\lambda| = \max_{\lambda \in \sigma(a)} |p(x)|. \]

Theorem 4.7 (Continuous Functional Calculus). If $a \in \mathcal{B}$ is a Hermitian element of a unital $C^*$-algebra, then there exists a unique $C^*$-algebra isomorphism, $\varphi_a : C(\sigma(a)) \to C^*(a,1)$ such that $\varphi_a(x) = a$ or equivalently, $\varphi_a(p) = p(a)$ for all $p \in \mathbb{C}[x]$. [We usually write $\varphi_a(x) = a$ or equivalently, $\varphi_a(p) = p(a)$ for all $p \in \mathbb{C}[x]$.]

Proof. By the classical Stone-Weierstrass theorem, $\{p|_{\sigma(a)} : p \in \mathbb{C}[x]\}$ is dense in $C(\sigma(a))$ and so because of Corollary 4.6, there exists a unique linear map, $\varphi_a : C(\sigma(a)) \to C^*(a,1)$, such that $\varphi_a(p) = p(a)$ for all $p \in \mathbb{C}[x]$ and $\|\varphi_a(f)\| = \|f\|_{k(\sigma(a))}$. It is now easily verified that $\varphi_a$ is a homomorphism with dense closed range and hence $\varphi_a$ is an isomorphism. Moreover, using $p(a)^* = \overline{p(a)}$ we easily conclude by a simple limiting argument that $\varphi_a(f) = \varphi_a(f)$. For the last assertion, as $\varphi_a$ is a *-homomorphism, it follows that $\sigma_{C^*(a,1)}(\varphi_a(f)) = \sigma_{C(\sigma(a))}(f) = f(\sigma(a))$.

Corollary 4.8 (Square Roots). If $a \in \mathcal{B}$ is a Hermitian element of a unital $C^*$-algebra and $\sigma(a) \subset [0,\infty)$, then there exists a Hermitian element $b \in \mathcal{B}$ such that $\sigma(b) \subset [0,\infty)$ and $a = b^2$. Moreover, if $c \in \mathcal{B}$ is Hermitian and $c^2 = a$, then $b = |c|$. [See Corollary ?? for the polar decomposition.]

\[ \sigma_{C^*(a,1)}(\varphi_a(f)) = \sigma_{C(\sigma(a))}(f) = f(\sigma(a)). \]

\[ \sigma_{C^*(a,1)}(\varphi_a(f)) = \sigma_{C(\sigma(a))}(f) = f(\sigma(a)). \]

\[ \sigma_{C^*(a,1)}(\varphi_a(f)) = \sigma_{C(\sigma(a))}(f) = f(\sigma(a)). \]

\[ \sigma_{C^*(a,1)}(\varphi_a(f)) = \sigma_{C(\sigma(a))}(f) = f(\sigma(a)). \]

\[ \sigma_{C^*(a,1)}(\varphi_a(f)) = \sigma_{C(\sigma(a))}(f) = f(\sigma(a)). \]

\[ \sigma_{C^*(a,1)}(\varphi_a(f)) = \sigma_{C(\sigma(a))}(f) = f(\sigma(a)). \]

\[ \sigma_{C^*(a,1)}(\varphi_a(f)) = \sigma_{C(\sigma(a))}(f) = f(\sigma(a)). \]

\[ \sigma_{C^*(a,1)}(\varphi_a(f)) = \sigma_{C(\sigma(a))}(f) = f(\sigma(a)). \]

4.3 Cyclic Vector and Subspace Decompositions

The first point we need to deal with is that understanding the structure of a $C^*$-subalgebra $(\mathcal{B})$ of $B(H)$ does not fully describe how $\mathcal{B}$ is embedded in $B(H)$. To understand the embedding problem we need to introduce the notion of cyclic vector and cyclic subspaces of $H$.

Definition 4.9 (Cyclic vectors). If $A$ is a sub-algebra of $B(H)$ a vector $x$ in $H$ is called a cyclic vector for $A$ if $Ax = \{Ax : A \in A\}$ is dense in $H$. We further say that an $A$-invariant subspace, $M \subset H$, is an $A$-cyclic subspace of $H$ if there exists $x \in M$ such that $Ax := \{Ax : A \in A\}$ is dense in $M$.

Lemma 4.10. If $A$ is a $*$-sub-algebra of $B(H)$ and $M \subset H$ is an $A$-invariant subspace, then $\overline{M}$ and $M^\perp$ are $A$-invariant subspaces.

Proof. If $m \in M$ and $m^\perp \in M^\perp$, then
\[ \langle Am^\perp, m \rangle = \langle m^\perp, A^*m \rangle = 0 \]
for all $A \in A$ as $A^* \in A$ ($A$ is a $*$-subalgebra). In other words, $\langle AM^\perp, M \rangle = \{0\}$ and hence $AM^\perp \subset M^\perp$. The assertion that $\overline{M}$ is also $A$-invariant follows by a simple continuity argument.
Theorem 4.11. Let $H$ be a separable Hilbert space and $A$ be a unital $*$-subalgebra of $B(H)$ with identity. Then $H$ may be decomposed into an orthogonal direct sum, $H = \oplus_{n=1}^{N} H_n$ ($N = \infty$ possible) such that $H_n$ is a cyclic subspace of $A$. [This cyclic decomposition is typically highly non-unique.]

Proof. Let $\{e_k\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$ be an orthonormal basis for $H$ and let

$$v_1 := e_1$$

and let $k_2 = \min \{k \in \mathbb{N} : e_k \notin H_1\}$ and let

$$v_2 := P_{H_1} e_{k_2}$$

Now let $k_3 := \min \{k \in \mathbb{N} : e_k \notin H_1 \oplus H_2\}$ and let

$$v_3 := P_{[H_1 \oplus H_2]} e_{k_3}$$

and continue this way inductively forever or until $\{e_k\}_{k=1}^{\infty} \subset H_N$ for some $N < \infty$.

Exercise 4.2. Show (using Zorn’s lemma say) that Theorem 4.11 holds without the assumption that $H$ is separable. In this case the second item should be replaced by the statement that there exists an index set $I$ and $\{v_{\alpha}\}_{\alpha \in I}$ a collection of non-zero vectors such that $H = \bigoplus_{\alpha \in I} H_\alpha$ (orthogonal direct sum) where $H_\alpha := H_{v_\alpha} = \overline{\mathcal{A}v_\alpha}$. 

Before leaving this topic let us explore the meaning of cyclic vectors by looking at the finite dimensional case.

Proposition 4.12. Let $T$ be an $n \times n$-diagonal matrix, $T = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_n)$ for some $\lambda_i \in \mathbb{C}$ and set $\sigma(T) := \{\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_n\}$. If $u \in \mathbb{C}^n$ is expressed as

$$u = \sum_{\lambda \in \sigma(T)} e_\lambda \quad (4.5)$$

where $e_\lambda \in \text{Nul}(T - \lambda I)$ for each $\lambda \in \sigma(T)$, then

$$\{p(T)u : p \in \mathbb{C}[z]\} = \text{span} \{e_\lambda : \lambda \in \sigma(T)\}.$$ 

In particular, there is a cyclic vector for $T$ iff $\#(\sigma(T)) = n$, i.e. all eigenvalues of $T$ have multiplicity 1. In this case, one may take $u = \sum_{\lambda \in \sigma(T)} e_\lambda$ where $e_\lambda \in \text{Nul}(T - \lambda I) \setminus \{0\}$ for all $\lambda \in \sigma(T)$. [Moral, the existence of a cyclic vector is equivalent to $T$ having no repeated eigenvalues.]

Proof. If $u$ is as in Eq. (4.5) and $p \in \mathbb{C}[z]$, then

$$p(T)u = \sum_{\lambda \in \sigma(T)} p(T)e_\lambda = \sum_{\lambda \in \sigma(T)} p(\lambda)e_\lambda.$$ 

As usual, given $\lambda_0 \in \sigma(T)$, we may choose $p \in \mathbb{C}[z]$ such that $p(\lambda) = \delta_{\lambda_0, \lambda}$ for all $\lambda \in \sigma(T)$. For this $p$ we have $p(T)u = e_{\lambda_0}$ and hence we learn

$$\{p(T)u : p \in \mathbb{C}[z]\} = \text{span} \{e_\lambda : \lambda \in \sigma(T)\}.$$ 

From this relation we see that maximum possible dimension of $\{p(T)u : p \in \mathbb{C}[z]\}$ is $\#(\sigma(T))$ which is equal to $n$ iff $\#(\sigma(T)) = n$.

4.4 The Diagonalization Strategy

Definition 4.13 (Radon measure). If $Y$ is a locally compact Hausdorff space, let $\mathcal{F}_Y = \sigma(\{\text{open sets}\})$ be the Borel $\sigma$-algebra on $Y$. A measure $\mu$ on $(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y)$ is a Radon measure if it $\mu(K) < \infty$ when $K$ is compact at it is a regular Borel measure, i.e.

1. $\mu$ is outer regular on Borel sets, i.e. if $A \in \mathcal{F}_Y$, then

$$\mu(A) = \inf \{\mu(V) : A \subset V \subset \circ \ Y\},$$

and

2. it is inner regular on open sets, i.e. if $V \subset \circ \ Y$, then

$$\mu(V) = \sup \{\mu(K) : K \subset \overline{V} \subset \circ \ Y, K \text{ compact}\}.$$ 

Proposition 4.14. Suppose that $Y$ is a compact Hausdorff space, $H$ is a Hilbert space, $B$ is a commutative unital $C^*$-subalgebra of $B(H)$, and $\phi : C(Y) \rightarrow B$ is a given $C^*$-isomorphism of $C^*$-algebras. [This is in fact can always be arranged, see Theorem 7.27 below.] Then for each $v \in H \setminus \{0\}$, there exists a unique finite radon measure, $\mu_v$ on $(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y)$ such that

$$\langle \phi(f)v, v \rangle = \int_Y f d\mu_v \quad \forall \ f \in C(Y). \quad (4.6)$$

Proof. For $f \in C(Y)$, let $A(f) := \langle \phi(f)v, v \rangle$ which is a linear functional on $C(Y)$. Moreover if $f \geq 0$, then $g = \sqrt{f} \in C(Y)$ and hence

$$A(f) = A(g^2) = \langle \phi(g^2)v, v \rangle = \langle \phi(g)\phi(g)v, v \rangle$$

$$= \langle \phi(g)v, \phi(g)v \rangle = \langle \phi(g)v, \phi(g)v \rangle = \|\phi(g)v\|^2 \geq 0.$$
Thus \( A \) is a positive linear functional on \( C(Y) \) and hence by the Riesz-Markov theorem there exists a unique (necessarily finite) Radon measure, \( \mu_v \), on \( (Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \) such that
\[
\langle \varphi (f) v, v \rangle = A(f) = \int_Y f \, d\mu_v \quad \forall \ f \in C(Y). 
\]
\[\blacksquare\]

**Proposition 4.15.** Continue the notation and assumptions in Proposition 4.14 and for each \( v \in H \setminus \{0\} \), let
\[
H_v := \overline{v H} \subset H. 
\]
Then there exists a unique unitary isomorphism, \( U_v : L^2(\mu_v) \to H_v \) which is uniquely determined by requiring
\[
U_v f = \varphi (f) v \in H_v \text{ for all } f \in C(Y). 
\]
Moreover, this unitary map satisfies,
\[
U_v^* \varphi (f)|_{H_v} U_v = M_f \text{ on } L^2(\mu_v) \quad \forall \ f \in C(Y). 
\]

**Proof.** Since
\[
\|U_v f\|^2 = \langle \varphi (f) v, \varphi (f) v \rangle = \langle \varphi (f)^* \varphi (f) v, v \rangle 
\]
\[
= \langle \varphi (f) \varphi (f) v, v \rangle = \left\langle \varphi \left(f^2\right) v, v \right\rangle = \int_Y |f|^2 d\mu_v = \|f\|^2, 
\]
and \( C(Y) \) is dense in \( L^2(\mu_v) \), it follows that \( U_v \) extends uniquely to an isometry from \( L^2(\mu_v) \) to \( H_v \). Clearly \( U_v \) has dense range and the range is closed since \( U_v \) is isometric, therefore \( \text{Ran}(U_v) = H_v \) and hence \( U_v \) is unitary.

Let us further note that for \( f, g \in C(Y) \),
\[
U_v^* \varphi (f) U_v g = U_v^* \varphi (f) \varphi (g) v = U_v^* \varphi (f g) v = f g = M_f g. 
\]
If \( g \in L^2(\mu_v) \), we may choose \( \{g_n\} \subset C(Y) \) so that \( g_n \to g \) in \( L^2(\mu_v) \). So by replacing \( g \) by \( g_n \) in Eq. \((4.10)\) and then passing to the limit as \( n \to \infty \) we conclude It then follows that
\[
U_v^* \varphi (f) U_v g = f g = M_f g \quad \forall \ g \in L^2(\mu) 
\]
which proves Eq. \((4.9)\). \[\blacksquare\]

**Theorem 4.16.** Continue the notation and assumptions in Proposition 4.14 Then there exist \( N \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\} \), a probability measure \( \mu \) measure on
\[
\Omega := \Lambda_N \times Y = \sum_{j \in \Lambda_N} Y_j \text{ where } Y_j = \{j\} \times Y 
\]
equipped with the product \( \sigma \) – algebra (here \( \Lambda_N = \{1, 2, \ldots, N\} \cap \mathbb{N} \)), and a unitary map \( U : L^2(\mu) \to H \) such that
\[
U^* \varphi (f) U = M_{f \pi} \text{ on } L^2(\mu) 
\]
where \( \pi : \Omega \to \mathbb{C} \) is defined by \( \pi (j, w) = w \) for all \( j \in \Lambda_N \) and \( w \in Y \), see Figure 4.2.

**Fig. 4.2.** Making disjoint copies of \( Y \) to take care of multiplicities.

**Proof.** By Theorem 4.11 there exists an \( N \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\} \) so that we may decompose \( H \) into an orthogonal direct sum, \( \oplus_{i \in \Lambda_N} H_i \), of cyclic subspaces for \( B \). Choose a cyclic vector, \( v_i \in H_i \), for all \( i \in \Lambda := \Lambda_N \) and normalize the \( \{v_i\}_{i \in \Lambda} \) so that
\[
\sum_{i \in \Lambda} \|v_i\|^2 = 1. 
\]
Let \( \mu_i = \mu_{v_i} \) be the measure in Proposition 4.14 and let \( \Omega := \Lambda \times Y \) which we equip with the product \( \sigma \) – algebra, \( \mathcal{F} \), and the probability measure \( \mu \) defined as follows. Every \( G \in \mathcal{F} \) may be written (see Remark 4.17 below) may be uniquely written as
\[
G = \bigoplus_{i \in \Lambda} \{i\} \times G_i \text{ for some } \{G_i\}_{i \in \Lambda} \subset \mathcal{F}_Y 
\]
and if we let
\[
\mu (G) := \sum_{i \in \Lambda} \mu_i (G_i), 
\]
then \( \mu \) is a measure on \( \mathcal{F} \). For this measure,
\[
\int_{\Omega} g \, d\mu = \sum_{i \in \Lambda} \int_{\Omega} g 1_{\{i\} \times Y} \, d\mu = \sum_{i \in \Lambda} \int_{\Omega} g \, d\mu_i 
\]
From which it easily follows that the map,
Remark 4.17. If is clear that every element in \( g \) is a unitary. For \( g \in L^2(\Omega, \mu) \) we define,

\[
Ug = \sum_{i \in A} U_{vi}g (i, \cdot) \in \oplus_{i \in A} L^2(Y, \mu_i)
\]

where \( U_{vi} \) is the unitary map in Proposition 4.15. Since

\[
\|Ug\|^2_H = \sum_{i \in A} \|U_{vi}g (i, \cdot)\|^2_{H_i} = \sum_{i \in A} \int_Y |g (i, w)|^2 d\mu_i (w) = \int_\Omega |g|^2 d\mu,
\]

\( U \) is an isometry and since \( U \) has dense range it is in fact unitary. Lastly if \( f \in C(Y) \) and \( g \in L^2(\mu) \), we have

\[
UMf \circ g = \sum_{i \in A} U_{vi} [f \circ \pi (i, \cdot) g (i, \cdot)] = \sum_{i \in A} U_{vi} [fg (i, \cdot)]
\]

\[
= \sum_{i \in A} U_{vi} [M_f g (i, \cdot)] = \sum_{i \in A} \varphi (f) U_{vi}g (i, \cdot) = \varphi (f) Ug.
\]

This completes the proof. \( \blacksquare \)

Remark 4.17. The product \( \sigma \)-algebra on \( A \times Y \) is given by the collection of sets

\[
F := \left\{ \sum_{j \in A} (\{j\} \times G_j) : \{G_j\}_{j=1}^\infty \in \mathcal{F}_Y \right\}.
\]

If is clear that every element in \( F \) is in the product \( \sigma \)-algebra and hence it suffices to shows \( F \) is a \( \sigma \)-algebra. The main point is to notice that if \( G = \sum_{j \in A} (\{j\} \times G_j) \), then

\[
(i, y) \in G \iff (i, y) \notin G \iff y \notin G_i \iff (i, y) \notin \{i\} \times G^c_i.
\]

This shows \( G^c = \sum_{i \in A} (\{i\} \times G^c_i) \) which is graphically easy to understand.

To see that \( \mu \) is a measure on \( F \), first observe that if \( H = \sum_{i \in A} \{i\} \times H_i \), then

\[
H \cap G = \sum_{i \in A} \{i\} \times [G_i \cap H_i]
\]

and so if \( \{G(n) = \sum_{i \in A} \{i\} \times G_i (n)\}_{n \in A} \) are pairwise disjoint then \( \{G_i (n)\}_{n \in A} \) must be pairwise disjoint for each \( i \in A \). Hence it follows that

\[
\sum_{n \in N} G(n) = \sum_{i \in A} \{i\} \times \left( \sum_{n \in N} G_i (n) \right)
\]

and therefore,

\[
\mu \left( \sum_{n \in N} G(n) \right) = \sum_{i \in A} \mu_i \left( \sum_{n \in N} G_i (n) \right) = \sum_{i \in A} \sum_{n \in N} \mu_i (G_i (n))
\]

\[
= \sum_{n \in N} \sum_{i \in A} \mu_i (G_i (n)) = \sum_{n \in N} \mu (G(n)).
\]

Notation 4.18 If \( (\Omega, \mathcal{F}) \) is a measurable space, let \( \ell^\infty (\Omega, \mathcal{F}) \) denote the bounded \( \mathcal{F}/\mathcal{B}_C \)-measurable functions from \( \Omega \) to \( C \).

Let us now rewrite Eq. (4.11) as

\[
\varphi (f) = UMf \circ \pi U^* \text{ for } f \in C(Y).
\]

From this equation we see there is a “natural” extension \( \varphi \) to a map, \( \psi : \ell^\infty (Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \to B(H) \) defined by

\[
\psi (f) := UMf \circ \pi U^* \text{ for all } f \in \ell^\infty (Y, \mathcal{F}_Y).
\]

This map \( \psi \) has the following properties.

Theorem 4.19 (Measurable Functional Calculus I). The map, \( \psi : \ell^\infty (Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \to B(H) \) in Eq. (4.13) has the following properties.

1. \( \psi = \varphi \) on \( C(Y) \).
2. \( \|\psi (f)\| \leq \|f\|_\infty \) for all \( f \in \ell^\infty (Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \).
3. If \( f_n \in \ell^\infty (Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \) converges to \( f \in \ell^\infty (Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \) boundedly then \( \psi (f_n) \rightharpoonup \psi (f) \).
4. \( \psi \) is a \( C^* \)-algebra homomorphism.
5. If \( f \geq 0 \) then \( \psi (f) \geq 0 \).

Proof. The proof of this theorem is straightforward and for the most part is left to the reader. Let me only verify items 3. and 5. here.

3. Let \( u \in H \) and \( g = U^* u \in L^2(\mu) \). Then

\[
\|\psi (f) u - \psi (f_n) u\|^2 = \|UMf \circ \pi U^* u - UMf_n \circ \pi U^* u\|^2
\]

\[
= \|[f \circ \pi - f_n \circ \pi] g\|_{L^2(\mu)}^2 \to 0 \text{ as } n \to \infty
\]

by DCT.

5. If \( f \geq 0 \), then

\[
\langle \psi (f) u, u \rangle = \langle UMf \circ \pi U^* u, u \rangle = \langle M_{f \circ \pi} g, g \rangle_{L^2(\mu)} = \int_\Omega f \circ \pi |g|^2 d\mu \geq 0.
\]

Alternatively, simply note that \( f = (\sqrt{f})^2 \) and hence

\[
\psi (f) = \psi (\sqrt{f})^2 = \psi (\sqrt{f}) \psi (\sqrt{f}) \geq 0.
\]
Definition 4.20. If $B \subset B(H)$, let $B' := \{b \in B(H) : [B, B] = \{0\}\}$ be the commutant of $B$. Thus $A \in B'$ iff $[A, B] = 0$ for all $B \in B$.

Remark 4.21. If $(Y, d)$ is a compact metric space, then $\sigma(C(Y)) = \mathcal{F}_Y$ where $\sigma(C(Y))$ is the smallest $\sigma$-algebra on $Y$ for which all continuous functions are measurable. Indeed we always have $\sigma(C(Y)) \subset \mathcal{F}_Y$ and so it suffices to show $V \in \sigma(C(Y))$ for all $V \subset_Y Y$. However, if $V$ is an open set, then $d_{V'}(x) := \inf_{y \in V'} d(x, y)$ is a continuous function on $Y$ such that $V = \{d_{V'} > 0\} \in \sigma(C(Y))$.

Proposition 4.22. If $Y$ is a compact metric space then there is precisely one map, $\hat{\psi} : \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \to B(H)$, which satisfies properties 1.-4. in Theorem 4.19. Moreover the image of this map is in $B'$.

Proof. If $\hat{\psi} : \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \to B(H)$ also satisfies items 1.-4. of Theorem 4.19, let

$$\mathbb{H} = \{f \in \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) : \hat{\psi}(f) = \hat{\psi}(f)\}.$$ 

One then easily verifies that $\mathbb{H}$ is closed is a subspace of $\ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y)$ which is closed under conjugation and bounded convergence and hence by the multiplicative system Theorem A.9 it follows that $\mathbb{H}$ contains all bounded $\sigma(C(Y)) = \mathcal{F}_Y$-measurable functions, i.e. $\mathbb{H} = \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y)$.

To prove the second assertion, let

$$\mathbb{H} = \{f \in \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) : [\hat{\psi}(f), B'] = \{0\}\}.$$ 

Then $\mathbb{H}$ is a linear space closed under conjugation and bounded convergence and contains $C(Y)$ as the reader should verify. Thus by another application of the multiplicative system Theorem A.9 $\mathbb{H} = \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y)$ and the proof is complete.

Corollary 4.23 (Spectral Theorem I). Let $H$ be a separable Hilbert space and $A \in B(H)$ be a self-adjoint operator. Then there exists a finite measure space, $\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mu$, a bounded function, $a : \Omega \to \sigma(A)$, and a unitary map, $U : L^2(\mu) \to H$, such that $A = UM_fU^*$. Moreover, if $f \in \ell^\infty(\sigma(A), \mathcal{F}_{\sigma(A)})$, then

$$\psi_A(f) = \hat{\psi}(f)(A) = UM_fU^*$$ 

defines the unique measurable functional calculus in this setting.

Proof. Let $B = C^*(A, I) \subset B(H)$ and then by Theorem 4.7 there exists $C^*$-isomorphism, $\varphi_A : C(\sigma(A)) \to B$ such that $\varphi_A(p) = p(A)$. To complete the proof of the theorem, we apply Theorem 4.16 with $\varphi = \varphi_A$ and take $a = id \circ \pi$ where $id : \sigma(A) \to \sigma(A)$ is the identity map, as in the language of Theorem 4.16.

The next theorem summarizes the result we have proved for a self-adjoint element, $A \in B(H)$.

Theorem 4.24 (Measurable Functional Calculus for a Hermitian). Let $H$ be a separable Hilbert space and $A$ be a self-adjoint element of $B(H)$. Then there exists a unique map $\psi_A : \ell^\infty(\sigma(A), \mathcal{F}_{\sigma(A)}) \to B(H)$ such that:

1. $\psi_A$ is a *-homomorphism, i.e. $\psi_A(fg) = \psi_A(f)\psi_A(g)$ and $\psi_A(f) = \psi_A(f^*)$ for all $f, g \in \ell^\infty(\sigma(A))$.
2. $\|\psi_A(f)\|_{op} \leq \|f\|_{\infty}$ for all $f \in \ell^\infty(\sigma(A))$.
3. $\psi_A(p) = p(A)$ for all $p \in \mathbb{C}[x]$. [Equivalently $\varphi(1) = I$ and $\psi_A(x) = A$ where $x : \sigma(A) \to \sigma(A)$ is the identity map.]
4. If $f_n \in \ell^\infty(\sigma(A))$ and $f_n \to f$ pointwise and boundedly, then $\psi_A(f_n) \to \psi_A(f)$ strongly.

Moreover this map has the following properties.

5. If $f \geq 0$ then $\psi_A(f) \geq 0$.
6. If $B \in B(H)$ and $[B, A] = 0$, then $[B, \psi_A(f)] = 0$ for all $f \in \ell^\infty(\sigma(A))$.
7. If $A\lambda = \lambda A$ for some $\lambda \in H$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$, then $\psi_A(f)\lambda = f(\lambda)\lambda$.

Proof. Although there is no need to give a proof here, we do so anyway in order to solidify the above ideas in this concrete special case.

Uniqueness. Suppose that $\psi : \ell^\infty(\sigma(A)) \to B(H)$ is another map satisfying (1) – (4). Let

$$\mathbb{H} := \{f \in \ell^\infty(\sigma(A), \mathbb{C}) : \psi(f) = \psi_A(f)\}.$$ 

Then $\mathbb{H}$ is a vector space of bounded complex valued functions which by property 4. is closed under bounded convergence and by property 1. is closed under conjugation. Moreover $\mathbb{H}$ contains

$$\mathbb{M} = \{p|_{\sigma(A)} : p \in \mathbb{C}[x]\}$$

and therefore also $C(\sigma(A), \mathbb{C})$ because of the Stone – Weierstrass approximation theorem. Therefore it follows from Theorem A.39 that $\mathbb{H} = \ell^\infty(\sigma(A))$, i.e. $\psi = \psi_A$.

Existence. Let $U : L^2(\Omega, \mu) \to H$ be as in Corollary 4.23 and then define

$$\psi_A(f) := UM_{f\circ a}U^* \quad \forall f \in \ell^\infty(\sigma(A)).$$

One easily verifies that $\psi_A$ satisfies items 1. – 4. Moreover we can easily verify items 5–7 as well.

5. If $f \geq 0$, then $f = (\sqrt{f})^2$ and hence $\psi_A(f) = \psi_A(\sqrt{f})^2 \geq 0$.
6. Let

$$\mathbb{H} := \{f \in \ell^\infty(\sigma(A), \mathbb{C}) : [B, \psi_A(f)] = 0\}$$

which is vector space closed under conjugation and bounded convergence. It is easily deduced from $[B, A] = 0$ that $[B, p(A)] = 0$ for all $p \in \mathbb{C}[x]$, the result

Again we use Theorem 2.68 and the fact that $\psi_A(f)$ is normal for all $f$. 

---

---
follows by an application of the multiplicative system Theorem A.9 applied using the multiplicative system,

\[ M = \{ p|_{\sigma(A)} : p \in \mathbb{C}[x] \} . \]

7. If \( Ah = \lambda h \) and \( g := U^* h \), then \( M_a g = \lambda g \) from which it follows that \( (a - \lambda) g = 0 \) \( \mu \)-a.e. which implies \( a = \lambda \mu \) \( \mu \)-a.e. on \( \{ g \neq 0 \} \). Thus it follows that \( f \circ a = f(\lambda) \mu \) \( \mu \)-a.e. on \( \{ g \neq 0 \} \) and this implies \( M_{f \circ a} g = f(\lambda) g \) which then implies,

\[ \psi_A(f)h = \psi_A(f)Ug = U M_{f \circ a} g = U f(\lambda) g = f(\lambda) h . \]
**More Measurable Functional Calculus**

This highly optional chapter contains more details on the general construction of the measurable functional calculus.

5.1 Constructing a Measurable Functional Calculus

Assumption 1 In this chapter we will assume that $Y$ is a compact Hausdorff space, $H$ is a Hilbert space, $B$ is a commutative unital $C^*$-subalgebra of $B(H)$, and $\varphi : C(Y) \to B$ is a given $C^*$ isomorphism of $C^*$-algebras. [This is in fact can always be arranged, see Theorem 7.27 below.]

Let us start by recording some notation and results we introduced in Proposition 4.14 and Proposition 4.15.

Notation 5.1 For each $v \in H$, we let

$$H_v := \overline{B^vH} \subset H$$

and $\mu_v$ be the unique (finite) Radon measure on $(Y, F_Y)$ such that

$$\langle \varphi (f) v, v \rangle = \int_Y fd\mu_v \forall f \in C(Y),$$

see Proposition 4.14. Further let $U_v : L^2(\mu_v) \to H_v$ be the unique unitary isomorphism determined by

$$U_vf = \varphi (f) v \in H_v \text{ for all } f \in C(Y)$$

which satisfies

$$\varphi (f) |_{H_v} = U_v M_f U_v^* \text{ on } L^2(\mu_v) \forall f \in C(Y)$$

as in Proposition 4.14.

Notation 5.2 Using Theorem 4.11 when $H$ is separable or Exercise 4.12 for general $H$, let us choose (and fix) $\{v_\alpha \}_{\alpha \in I} \subset H$ such that $H = \overline{\bigoplus_{\alpha \in I} H_{v_\alpha}}$ and let $P_\alpha$ denote orthogonal projection onto $H_{v_\alpha}$ for each $\alpha \in I$.

For $f \in C(Y)$ and $u \in H$, we have

$$\varphi (f) u = \varphi (f) \sum_{\alpha \in I} P_\alpha u = \sum_{\alpha \in I} \varphi (f) P_\alpha u = \sum_{\alpha \in I} U_{v_\alpha} M_f U_{v_\alpha}^* P_\alpha u$$

wherein we used Eq. (5.4) for the last equality. In light of Eq. (5.5), the following definition is a "natural" extension of $\varphi$ to $f \in \ell^\infty (Y, F_Y)$.

Definition 5.3 (Construction of $\psi$). Continuing the notation above, let $\psi : \ell^\infty (Y, F_Y) \to B(H)$ be defined by

$$\psi (f) u := \sum_{\alpha \in I} U_{v_\alpha} M_f U_{v_\alpha}^* P_\alpha u \text{ for all } u \in H.$$  

In other words, $\psi (f)$ is given in block diagonal form as

$$\psi (f) = \text{diag} \left( \{ U_{v_\alpha} M_f U_{v_\alpha}^* \}_{\alpha \in I} \right).$$

Theorem 5.4. The map, $\psi : \ell^\infty (Y, F_Y) \to B(H)$ in Definition 5.3 has the following properties.

1. $\psi = \varphi$ on $C(Y)$.
2. $\| \psi (f) \| \leq \| f \|_\infty \text{ for all } f \in \ell^\infty (Y, F_Y)$.
3. If $f_n \in \ell^\infty (Y, F_Y)$ converges to $f \in \ell^\infty (Y, F_Y)$ boundedly then $\psi (f_n) \rightharpoonup \psi (f)$.
4. $\psi$ is a $C^*$-algebra homomorphism.
5. If $f \geq 0$ then $\psi (f) \geq 0$.

Proof. Recall $I_u := \{ \alpha \in I : u_\alpha := P_\alpha u \neq 0 \}$ is at most countable for each $u \in H$ and so

$$u = \sum_{\alpha \in I} u_\alpha = \sum_{\alpha \in I_u} u_\alpha - \text{a countable sum}.$$  

As the reader should verify, $\psi (f) : H \to H$ is linear and $\psi (1) = I_H$. We now prove the remaining items in turn.

1. That $\psi$ is an extension of $\varphi$ follows from Eq. (5.5).
   For the rest of this proof let $u \in H$,
More Measurable Functional Calculus

\[ g_\alpha := U_{v_\alpha}^* P_\alpha u \in L^2(\mu_{v_\alpha}) \text{ for } \alpha \in I, \]

and \( m_u \) be the measure on \((Y, \mathcal{F}_Y)\) defined by

\[ dm_u := \sum_{\alpha \in I_u} |g_\alpha|^2 d\mu_{v_\alpha}. \]  \hspace{1cm} (5.8)

2. For \( f \in \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \),

\[ \|f\|_{\ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y)} = \sum_{\alpha \in I} \|M_f u_{v_\alpha} \|_{L^2(\mu_{v_\alpha})}, \]

which shows \( f \) is \( \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \)-valued.

3. Taking \( f = 1 \) in this equation shows

\[ m_u(Y) = \|u\|_2^2 < \infty \]  \hspace{1cm} (5.10)

which proves 2.3.

4. Item 3. is now also easily proved since if \( f_n \to f \) boundedly then

\[ \|f_n\|_{\ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y)} \to \|f\|_{\ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y)} \]

by DCT.

5. Taking \( v = u \) in Eq. (5.11) shows,

\[ \langle \psi(f)u,v \rangle = \sum_{\alpha \in I_u} \langle U_{v_\alpha} M_f U_{v_\alpha}^* P_\alpha u, v \rangle = \sum_{\alpha \in I_u} \langle P_\alpha U_{v_\alpha} M_f U_{v_\alpha}^* P_\alpha u, v \rangle = \sum_{\alpha \in I_u} \langle M_f U_{v_\alpha}^* P_\alpha u, U_{v_\alpha}^* P_\alpha v \rangle \]

which shows \( \psi(f)^* = \psi(\hat{f}) \) and item 3. is proved.

5. Taking \( v = u \) in Eq. (5.11) shows,

\[ \langle \psi(f)u,u \rangle = \sum_{\alpha \in I_u} \langle M_f U_{v_\alpha}^* P_\alpha u, U_{v_\alpha}^* P_\alpha u \rangle \]

which proves 2.

Proposition 5.5. If we now further assume that \( \mathcal{F}_Y = \mathcal{F}_0 \), then there is precisely one map, \( \psi : \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \to B(H) \) such that properties in items 1.-4. of Theorem 5.4 hold and moreover \( \psi \) is uniquely determined by

\[ \langle \psi(f)u,u \rangle = \int_Y f dm_u \text{ for all } f \in \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y). \]  \hspace{1cm} (5.12)

It clearly follows from this identity that \( \psi(f) \geq 0 \) if \( f \geq 0 \).

Proof. Suppose that \( \hat{\psi} : \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \to B(H) \) also satisfies items 1.-4. of Theorem 5.4. Then let

\[ \mathbb{H} = \left\{ f \in \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) : \psi(f) = \hat{\psi}(f) \right\}. \]

One then easily verifies that \( \mathbb{H} \) is closed and is a subspace of \( \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \) which is closed under conjugation and bounded convergence and hence by the multiplicative system Theorem 5.4 it follows that \( \mathbb{H} \) contains all bounded Baire-measurable functions, i.e. \( \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_0) \subset \mathbb{H} \subset \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \). Since we are assuming \( \mathcal{F}_Y = \mathcal{F}_0 \), it follows that \( \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_0) = \mathbb{H} = \ell^\infty(Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \). To finish the proof it

\[ \text{This will be the case if } Y \text{ is metrizable for example, see below.} \]
From this identity and a simple application of the multiplicative system Theorem 5.7 (Properties of Locally compact spaces). Suppose Proposition 5.6.

ψ is a compact subset of \( X, K \subseteq X \) to indicate that \( C \) is a closed subset of \( X \) and \( K \) is a compact subset of \( X \) respectively.

1. \( K \cup U \) and \( K \cup V \) are disjoint compact sets and hence there exists two disjoint open sets \( U' \) and \( V' \) such that \( K \setminus U \subseteq V' \) and \( K \setminus V \subseteq U' \).

2. Tietze extension theorem with elementary proof in Halms.

3. \{ \( f \leq c \) \}, \( \cap_{n=1}^{\infty} \{ f < c + 1/n \} \) with similar formula for the other cases.

4. For each \( x \in K \), let \( V_x \) be a open neighborhood of \( K \) such that \( V_x \subset U \), and set \( V = \bigcup_{x \in K} V_x \). Let \( \Lambda \subseteq K \) is a finite set such that \( K \subseteq V \). Since \( V = \bigcup_{x \in K} V_x \) is compact, we may replace \( U \) by \( V \) if necessary and assume that \( U \) is pre-compact. By Urysohn’s lemma, there exists \( f \in C_c(X, [0,1]) \) such that \( f = 0 \) on \( K \) and \( f = 1 \) on \( U^c \). If we now defined \( U_0 = \{ f < 1/2 \} \) and \( K_0 = \{ f \leq 1/2 \} \) then \( K \subset U_0 \subset K_0 \subset U \), \( K_0 \) is a Baire set which is compact and \( | \mathcal{G}_\delta | \) by item 2. Moreover \( U_0 \) is \( \sigma \)-compact because

\[ U_0 = \{ f < 1/2 \} \equiv \bigcup_{n=3}^{\infty} \{ f \leq 1/2 - 1/n \}. \]

**Definition 5.8 (Borel and Baire \( \sigma \)-algebras).** Let \( F_X \) denote the Borel \( \sigma \)-algebra on \( X \), i.e. the \( \sigma \)-algebra generated by open sets and \( F_0 \) be the Baire-\( \sigma \)-algebra, i.e. the sigma algebra, \( \sigma (C_c(X)) \), generated by \( C_c(X) \). A Baire measure is a positive measure, \( \mu_0 \), on \( (X, F_0) \) which is finite on compact Baire sets.

**Notation 5.9** If \( (\Omega, F) \) is a general measurable space we let \( \ell^\infty (\Omega, F) \) denote the bounded \( F/B_\infty \) – measurable functions, \( f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \).

For the rest of this section we will suppose that \( Y \) is a compact Hausdorff space.

**Theorem 5.10 (Riesz-Markov Theorem).** Let \( Y \) be a compact Hausdorff space. There is a one to one correspondence between positive linear functionals, \( \Lambda : C_c(Y, \mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \), Radon measures \( \mu \) on \( (Y, F_Y) \), and Baire measures \( \mu_0 \) on \( (Y, F_0) \) determined by:

\[ \Lambda(f) = \int_Y f d\mu = \int_Y f d\mu_0 \text{ for all } f \in C(Y), \]

and \( \mu_0 = \mu|_{F_0} \).

**Proof.** The main point is that if \( \mu_0 \) is a Baire measure on \( Y \), then \( \Lambda(f) = \int_Y f d\mu_0 \) is a positive linear functional on \( C(Y, \mathbb{C}) \). Therefore, by the Riesz-Markov theorem, there exists a unique Radon measure, \( \mu \), on \( (Y, F_Y) \) such that

\[ \int_Y f d\mu = \int_Y f d\mu_0 \text{ for all } f \in C(Y). \]
\[ \int_Y f d\mu = \int_Y f d\mu_0 \text{ for all } f \in C(Y). \quad (5.15) \]

It is now a simple application of the multiplicative system Theorem \( A.9 \) to show Eq. \( 5.15 \) is valid for all \( f \in L^\infty(Y, F_Y) \) and hence \( \mu_0 = \mu |_{F_0}. \)

**Remark 5.11.** In general it is not true that \( F_0 = F_Y \), only that \( F_0 \subset F_Y \). This is the reason one uses Radon measures on \((Y, F_Y)\) rather than arbitrary measures. For the reader wishing to avoid such unpleasantries (at least on first reading) should further assume \( Y \) is metrizable, i.e. the topology on \( Y \) is induced from a metric, \( d \), on \( Y \). By Remark \( \ref{rem:4.21} \) it follows that \( F_0 = F_Y \) and as a consequence, if \( Y \) is metrizable, then all finite measures on \((Y, B_Y)\) are in fact Radon-measures, see Theorem \( \ref{thm:5.10} \).

**Exercise 5.1.** Let \( Y \) be a compact Hausdorff space. Prove the following assertions.

1. If \( \mu \) is a Radon measure and \( 0 \leq f \in L^1(Y, F_Y, \mu) \), then \( d\nu = f d\mu \) is a Radon measure.
2. If \( \mu_1, \mu_2 \) are two Radon measures, then so is \( \mu_1 + \mu_2 \).
3. Suppose that \( \{\mu_j\}_{j=1}^\infty \) are finite Radon measures such that \( \mu := \sum_{j=1}^\infty \mu_j \) is finite measure. Then \( \mu \) is a Radon measure on \((Y, F_Y)\).

**5.3 Generalization to arbitrary compact Hausdorff spaces**

**Lemma 5.12.** If \( f \in L^\infty(Y, F_Y) \) and \( v \in H \), then \( \langle U_v f, v \rangle = \int_Y f d\mu_v. \) In particular if \( f \leq g \) then \( \langle U_v f, v \rangle \leq \langle U_v g, v \rangle. \)

**Proof.** The result holds for all \( f \in C(Y) \) by definition of \( \mu_v \) and \( U_v \), see Eqs. \( 5.2 \) and \( 5.3 \). Given a general \( f \in L^\infty(Y, F_Y) \) we may find \( f_n \in C(Y) \) such that \( f_n \to f \) in \( L^2(\mu_v) \) and therefore,

\[ \langle U_v f, v \rangle = \lim_{n \to \infty} \langle U_v f_n, v \rangle = \lim_{n \to \infty} \int_Y f_n d\mu_v = \int_Y f d\mu_v. \]

**Lemma 5.13.** If \( V \subset Y \) then

\[ \sup_{K \subset V} \langle U_v 1_K, v \rangle = \langle U_v 1_V, v \rangle \]

and if \( E \in F_Y \), then

\[ \inf_{E \subset V \subset Y} \langle U_v 1_V, v \rangle = \langle U_v 1_E, v \rangle. \]

**Proof.** The proof of these statements are elementary consequences of Lemma \( \ref{lem:5.12} \) and the fact that \( \mu_u \) is a Radon measure.

**Theorem 5.14.** The map, \( \psi : L^\infty(Y, F_Y) \to B(H) \) in Definition \( 5.4 \) has the following additional properties over those stated in Theorem \( 5.4 \).

1. \( \psi \) satisfies Eq. \( 5.13 \), i.e.

\[ \langle \psi(f) u, u \rangle = \int_Y f d\mu_u \text{ for all } f \in L^\infty(Y, F_Y) \text{ and } u \in H. \]

This identity, because of Lemma \( 5.26 \), uniquely specifies \( \psi(f) \) and hence shows that \( \psi \) is independent of the choices made in the cyclic subspace decomposition of \( H \).

2. \( \psi \) is regular in the following sense;

a) if \( E \in F_Y \) then

\[ \psi(1_E) = \inf_{E \subset V \subset Y} \langle \psi(1_V), v \rangle \]

or by abuse of notation

\[ \psi(E) = \inf \{ \langle \psi(V), v \rangle : E \subset V \subset Y \}. \]

[We abuse notation here and are writing \( \psi(E) \) to mean \( \psi(1_E) \) where \( E \) is a Borel set.]

b) If \( V \subset Y \), then

\[ \psi(1_V) = \sup_{K \subset V} \langle \psi(1_K), v \rangle \]

or by abuse of notation

\[ \psi(V) = \sup \{ \langle \psi(K), v \rangle : K \subset V \}. \]

**Proof.** Let \( dm_u = \sum_{a \in \ell_n} |g_a|^2 d\mu_v \), as in Eq. \( 5.8 \) in Theorem \( 5.4 \).

1. By item 1. of Exercise \( 5.14 \), \( |g_a|^2 d\mu_v \) is a regular Radon measure and then by item 3. of the same exercise it follows that \( m_u \) is a Radon measure. Therefore from Eq. \( 5.14 \) and the uniqueness assertion in the Riesz-Markov theorem, we may conclude \( m_u = m_u \) which coupled with Eq. \( 5.12 \) completes the proof of item 1.

2. The regularity statements follows by combining Lemmas \( 5.21 \) and Lemma \( 5.13 \).

**Theorem 5.15.** There is exactly one \( C^* \)-homomorphism, \( \psi : L^\infty(Y, F_Y) \to B(H) \) such that Properties 1.-4. of Theorem \( 5.4 \) and the regularity property in item 2. of Theorem \( 5.14 \).
Proof. We have already proved existence and so we now need only prove uniqueness. Let \( \psi : \ell^\infty (Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \rightarrow B (H) \) be another \( C^* \)-homomorphism satisfying the stated properties in the statement of the theorem. Following the proof of Proposition 5.5 we already know that \( \hat{\psi} = \psi \) on \( \ell^\infty (Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \). We now need to use the regularity assumption to extend the identity to all of \( \ell^\infty (Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \) which we now do.

Let \( V \subset K \). By item 4. of Theorem 5.7 to each compact set, \( K \subset V \), there exists a Baire measurable compact set \( K_0 \) such that \( K \subset K_0 \subset V \). By the given regularity and equality of \( \psi \) and \( \hat{\psi} \) on Baire sets we may conclude that

\[
\psi (1_V) = \sup \left\{ \psi (1_{K_0}) : V \supset K_0 \text{ compact & Baire} \right\} = \hat{\psi} (1_V).
\]

Then given any Borel measurable set \( E \subset Y \) we find,

\[
\psi (1_E) = \inf \left\{ \psi (1_V) = \hat{\psi} (1_V) : E \subset V \subset K_0 \right\} = \hat{\psi} (1_E).
\]

By linearity, \( \psi = \hat{\psi} \) on all Borel simple functions and then by taking uniform limits we conclude that \( \psi = \hat{\psi} \) on \( \ell^\infty (Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \).

Proposition 5.16. If \( f \in \ell^\infty (Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \), then \( \psi (f) \in B^0 \), i.e. if \( [A,B] = 0 \) for all \( B \in B \) then \([A, \psi (f)] = 0\). In words, \( \psi (f) \) commutes with every operator, \( A \in B (H), \) that commutes with every operator in \( B \).

Proof. Suppose that \( A \in B' \). As \( \psi (f) = \varphi (f) \in B \) for all \( f \in C (Y) \) it follows that \( [\psi (f), A] = 0 \). An application of the multiplicative system Theorem A.9 then shows that \( [\psi (f), A] = 0 \) for all Baire measurable bounded functions, \( f : Y \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \). Now suppose that \( V \subset K \). By item 4. of Theorem 5.7 to each compact set, \( K \subset V \), there exists a Baire measurable compact set \( K_0 \) such that \( K \subset K_0 \subset V \). Therefore by the regularity of \( \psi \) as proved in Theorem 5.14 we may conclude that

\[
\psi (1_V) = \sup_{K_0 \subset V} \psi (1_{K_0})
\]

which along with Lemma 5.20 shows that \( [\psi (1_V), A] = 0 \). Then given any \( E \in \mathcal{F}_Y \), we have

\[
\psi (1_E) = \inf_{E \subset V \subset K} \psi (1_V)
\]

also commutes with \( A \), again by Lemma 5.20. Therefore \( [\psi (f), A] = 0 \) for any simple function in \( \ell^\infty (Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \) and therefore by uniformly approximating \( f \in \ell^\infty (Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \) by Borel simple functions shows \( [\psi (f), A] = 0 \) for all \( f \in \ell^\infty (Y, \mathcal{F}_Y) \).

5.4 Appendix: Operator Ordering and the Lattice of Orthogonal Projections

Exercise 5.2. Suppose that \( T \in B (H) \), \( M \) is a closed subspace of \( H \), and \( P = P_M \) is orthogonal projection onto \( M \). Show \( 0 = [T, P] := TP - PT \) iff \( TM \subset M \) and \( T^* M \subset M \).

See Definition ?? and related material for operator ordering basics.

Definition 5.17. If \( P \) and \( Q \) are two orthogonal projections on a Hilbert space \( H \), then we write \( P \leq Q \) to mean \( \text{Ran} (P) \subset \text{Ran} (Q) \). This defines a partial ordering on the collection of orthogonal projection on \( H \). If \( \mathcal{P} \) is an family of orthogonal projections on \( H \) then an orthogonal projection, \( Q \), is an upper bound (lower bound) for \( \mathcal{P} \) if \( P \leq Q \) for all \( P \in \mathcal{P} \).

Remark 5.18. The notation \( P \leq Q \) is also consistent with the common meaning of ordering of self-adjoint operators given by \( A \leq B \) iff \( \langle Av, v \rangle \leq \langle Bv, v \rangle \) for all \( v \in H \). Indeed if \( \text{Ran} (P) \subset \text{Ran} (Q) \) and \( v \in H \) then \( Qv = PQv + w = Pv + w \) where \( w \perp Pv \) and hence,

\[
\langle Qv, v \rangle = \|Qv\|^2 \geq \|Pv\|^2 = \langle Pv, v \rangle.
\]

Conversely if \( \langle Pv, v \rangle \leq \langle Qv, v \rangle \) for all \( v \in H \), then by taking \( v \in \text{Ran} (Q)^\perp \) we learn that

\[
\|Pv\|^2 = \langle Pv, v \rangle \leq \langle Qv, v \rangle = 0.
\]

so that \( v \in \text{Ran} (P)^\perp \), i.e. \( \text{Ran} (Q)^\perp \subset \text{Ran} (P)^\perp \). Taking orthogonal complements then shows \( \text{Ran} (P) \subset \text{Ran} (Q) \), i.e. \( P \leq Q \) as in Definition 5.17.

Lemma 5.19. If \( \mathcal{P} \) is a family of orthogonal projections on a Hilbert space \( H \), then there exists unique orthogonal projections, \( P_{\sup} \) and \( P_{\inf} \), such that

1. \( P_{\sup} \) is an upper bound for \( \mathcal{P} \) and if \( Q \) is any other upper bound for \( \mathcal{P} \) then \( P_{\sup} \leq Q \).
2. \( P_{\inf} \) is a lower bound for \( \mathcal{P} \) and if \( Q \) is any other lower bound for \( \mathcal{P} \) then \( Q \leq P_{\inf} \).

We write \( P_{\sup} = \sup \mathcal{P} \) and \( P_{\inf} = \inf \mathcal{P} \).

Proof. If \( Q \) is an upper bound for \( \mathcal{P} \) (which exists, take \( Q = I \)) then \( \text{Ran} (P) \subset \text{Ran} (Q) \) for all \( P \in \mathcal{P} \) and hence

\[
M_{\sup} := \bigcup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} \text{Ran} (P) \subset \text{Ran} (Q).
\]

It is now easy to verify that \( P_{\sup} \) defined to be orthogonal projection onto \( M_{\sup} \) is the desired least upper bound for \( \mathcal{P} \).
If \( Q \) is an lower bound for \( P \) (which exists, take \( Q \equiv 0 \)) then \( \text{Ran}(Q) \subset \text{Ran}(P) \) for all \( P \in \mathcal{P} \) and hence
\[
\text{Ran}(Q) \subset M_{\text{inf}} := \bigcap_{P \in \mathcal{P}} \text{Ran}(P).
\]
It is now easy to verify that \( P_{\text{inf}} \) defined to be orthogonal projection onto \( M_{\text{inf}} \) is the desired greatest lower bound for \( P \).

Lemma 5.20. Let \( \mathcal{P} \) be a family of orthogonal projections on a Hilbert space \( H \). If \( A \in \mathcal{A}' \), i.e. \( [A,P] = 0 \) for all \( P \in \mathcal{P}' \) then \( [A,\inf P] = 0 = [A,\sup P] \).

Proof. As \( AP = PA \) for all \( P \in \mathcal{P} \), by taking adjoints we also have \( A^*P = PA^* \) for all \( P \in \mathcal{P} \). From these equation it follows that
\[
A \text{Ran}(P) \subset \text{Ran}(P) \text{ and } A^* \text{Ran}(P) \subset \text{Ran}(P) \quad \forall P \in \mathcal{P}. \tag{5.16}
\]
By Eq. (5.16),
\[
A \left[ \bigcap_{P \in \mathcal{P}} \text{Ran}(P) \right] \subset \left[ \bigcap_{P \in \mathcal{P}} \text{Ran}(P) \right]
\text{ and }
A^* \left[ \bigcap_{P \in \mathcal{P}} \text{Ran}(P) \right] \subset \left[ \bigcap_{P \in \mathcal{P}} \text{Ran}(P) \right]
\]
and therefore both \( A \) and \( A^* \) both preserve \( \text{Ran}(P_{\text{inf}}) \), i.e.
\[
AP_{\text{inf}} = P_{\text{inf}}PA_{\text{inf}} \text{ and } A^*P_{\text{inf}} = P_{\text{inf}}A^*P_{\text{inf}}.
\]
Taking adjoints of these equations also shows,
\[
P_{\text{inf}}A^* = P_{\text{inf}}A^*P_{\text{inf}} \text{ and } P_{\text{inf}}A = P_{\text{inf}}AP_{\text{inf}}
\]
and therefore \( [A,P_{\text{inf}}] = 0 \).

Similarly by Eq. (5.16), we may conclude that
\[
A \sum_{P \in \mathcal{P}} \text{Ran}(P) \subset \sum_{P \in \mathcal{P}} \text{Ran}(P) \text{ and } A^* \sum_{P \in \mathcal{P}} \text{Ran}(P) \subset \sum_{P \in \mathcal{P}} \text{Ran}(P)
\]
and then by taking closures we learn that \( A \) and \( A^* \) both preserve \( \text{Ran}(P_{\text{sup}}) \). The same argument as above then shows \( [A,P_{\text{sup}}] = 0 \).

Lemma 5.21. Let \( \mathcal{P} \) be a family of orthogonal projections on a Hilbert space \( H \).

1. If there exists and orthogonal projection \( Q \) such that \( \langle Qv,v \rangle = \inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} \langle Pv,v \rangle \) for all \( v \in H \), then \( Q = P_{\text{sup}} \).

Proof. Since \( P \leq P_{\text{sup}} \) for all \( P \in \mathcal{P} \), it follows by Remark 5.18 that
\[
\langle Qv,v \rangle = \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} \langle Pv,v \rangle \leq \langle P_{\text{sup}}v,v \rangle \quad \forall v \in H
\]
which then implies \( P \leq Q \leq P_{\text{sup}} \) for all \( P \in \mathcal{P} \) and hence \( Q = P_{\text{sup}} \). Similarly, since \( P_{\text{inf}} \leq P \) for all \( P \in \mathcal{P} \), it follows by Remark 5.18 that
\[
\langle Qv,v \rangle = \inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} \langle Pv,v \rangle \geq \langle P_{\text{inf}}v,v \rangle \quad \forall v \in H
\]
which then implies \( P_{\text{inf}} \leq Q \leq P \) for all \( P \in \mathcal{P} \) and hence \( Q = P_{\text{inf}} \).
Structure Theory of Commutative $C^*$-algebras
Throughout this part, $\mathcal{B}$ will be a complex unital commutative Banach algebra. So far we have been considering a single operator and its spectral properties and functional calculus. What we would like to do now is to simultaneously diagonalize a collection of commuting operators. The goals of this part are;

1. study the structure of $\mathcal{B}$,
2. show that when $\mathcal{B}$ is a $C^*$-algebra, that $\mathcal{B}$ is isomorphic to $C(X)$ for some compact Hausdorff space, $X$,
3. develop the continuous functional calculus for commutative $C^*$-algebras,
4. and simultaneously diagonalize all of the operators in commutative unital $C^*$-subalgebra of $B(H)$ where $H$ is a separable Hilbert space.

The following two notions will play a key role in our discussions below.

**Definition 5.22 (Characters and Spectrum).** A **character** of $\mathcal{B}$ is a nonzero multiplicative linear functional on $\mathcal{B}$, i.e. $\alpha : \mathcal{B} \to \mathbb{C}$ is an algebra homomorphism so in particular $\alpha(ab) = \alpha(a)\alpha(b)$.

The **spectrum** of $\mathcal{B}$ is the set $\tilde{\mathcal{B}}$ (or denoted by $\text{spec}(\mathcal{B})$) of all characters of $\mathcal{B}$.

Please note that we do not assume $\alpha$ to be bounded (i.e. continuous). However, as shown in Proposition 7.2 below the continuity is automatic. If $\alpha \in \tilde{\mathcal{B}}$ then $\alpha(1) = 1$ because $\alpha(1^2) = \alpha(1)^2$ so $\alpha(1) = 0$ or $\alpha(1) = 1$. If $\alpha(1) = 0$ then $\alpha \equiv 0$ so $\alpha(1) = 1$. Given this information,

$$\tilde{\mathcal{B}} := \{\alpha \in \mathcal{B}^* : \alpha(1) = 1 \text{ and } \alpha(AB) = \alpha(A)\alpha(B)\}.$$ (5.17)

For the next definition, let $\text{Func}(\tilde{\mathcal{B}} \to \mathbb{C})$ denote the space of functions from $\tilde{\mathcal{B}}$ to $\mathbb{C}$.

**Definition 5.23 (Gelfand Map).** For $a \in \mathcal{B}$ let $\hat{a} : \mathcal{B} \to \mathbb{C}$ be the function defined by $\hat{a}(\alpha) = \alpha(a)$ for all $\alpha \in \tilde{\mathcal{B}}$. The map

$$\mathcal{B} \ni a \to \hat{a} \in \text{Func}(\tilde{\mathcal{B}} \to \mathbb{C})$$

is called the **canonical mapping** or **Gelfand mapping** of $\mathcal{B}$ into $\text{Func}(\tilde{\mathcal{B}} \to \mathbb{C})$. [This definition will be refined in Definition 7.16 below.]

Before getting down to business, we will pause to motivate the theory by first working in a finite dimensional linear algebra setting. This is the content of the first chapter of this part.

---

2 We will see shortly that $\tilde{\mathcal{B}} \neq \emptyset$, see Lemmas 7.7 and 7.11
Finite Dimensional Matrix Algebra Spectrum

For the purposes of this motivational chapter, let $V$ be a finite dimensional inner product space and suppose that $B$ is a unital commutative sub-algebra of $\text{End}_\mathbb{C}(V)$.

**Proposition 6.1.** If $B$ is a commutative sub-algebra of $\text{End}_\mathbb{C}(V)$ with $I \in B$, then there exists $v \in V \setminus \{0\}$ which is a simultaneous eigenvector of $B$ for all $B \in B$. Moreover, there exists a character, $\alpha \in \tilde{B}$, such that $Bv = \alpha(B)v$ for all $B \in B$.

**Proof.** Let $\{B_j\}_{j=1}^k$ be a basis for $B$. Using the theory of characteristic polynomials along with the fact that $\mathbb{C}$ is algebraically closed, there exists $\lambda_1 \in \mathbb{C}$ which is an eigenvalue of $B_1$, i.e. $\text{Nul}(B_1 - \lambda_1) \neq \{0\}$. Since $B_2 \text{Nul}(B_1 - \lambda_1) \subset \text{Nul}(B_1 - \lambda_1)$ it follows in the same way that there exists a $\lambda_2 \in \mathbb{C}$ so that $\text{Nul}(B_2 - \lambda_2) \cap \text{Nul}(B_1 - \lambda_1) \neq \{0\}$. Again one verifies that $B_3$ leaves the joint eigenspace, $\text{Nul}(B_2 - \lambda_2) \cap \text{Nul}(B_1 - \lambda_1)$, invariant and hence there exists $\lambda_3 \in \mathbb{C}$ such that $\text{Nul}(B_3 - \lambda_3) \cap \text{Nul}(B_2 - \lambda_2) \cap \text{Nul}(B_1 - \lambda_1) \neq \{0\}$.

Continuing this process inductively allows us to find $\{\lambda_j\}_{j=1}^k \subset \mathbb{C}$ so that $\cap_{j=1}^k \text{Nul}(B_j - \lambda_j) \neq \{0\}$. Let $v$ be a non-zero element of $\cap_{j=1}^k \text{Nul}(B_j - \lambda_j)$. As the general element $B \in B$ is of the form $B = \sum_{j=1}^k b_j B_j$, it follows that

$$Bv = \sum_{j=1}^k b_j B_j v = \left( \sum_{j=1}^k b_j \lambda_j \right) v$$

(6.1)

showing that $v$ is a joint eigenvector for all $B \in B$.

For the second assertion, let $\alpha : B \to \mathbb{C}$ be defined by requiring $Bv = \alpha(B)v$ for all $B \in B$. Then for $A, B \in B$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ we have $\alpha(I)v = Iv = v$,

$$\alpha(A + \lambda B)v = (A + \lambda B)v = Av + \lambda Bv = [\alpha(A) + \lambda \alpha(B)]v,$$

and

$$\alpha(AB)v = ABv = A[\alpha(B)v] = \alpha(A)Bv = \alpha(B)\alpha(A)v$$

which altogether shows $\alpha$ is linear, multiplicative, and $\alpha(I) = 1$.

**Corollary 6.2.** For every $B \in B$ and $\sigma(B) = \{\alpha(B) : \alpha \in \tilde{B}\}$, where $\sigma(B) \subset \mathbb{C}$ is now precisely the set of eigenvalues of $B$.

**Proof.** If $\alpha \in \tilde{B}$ is given and $b := \alpha(B)$, then $\alpha(B - bI) = 0$ which implies $B - bI$ has no inverse in $\text{End}(V)$ which according to Lemma 3.9 implies that $\text{End}(V)$ has no inverse in $\text{End}(V)$ and hence $b \in \sigma(B)$. Conversely, if $b \in \sigma(B)$ is given, in the proof of Proposition 6.1 choose $B_1 = B$ and and $\lambda_1 = b$. Then the proof of Proposition 6.1 produces a $\alpha \in \tilde{B}$ so that $\alpha(B) = \lambda_1 = b$.

**Definition 6.3 (Joint Spectrum).** For $\{B_j\}_{j=1}^n \subset B$, the set,$$
\sigma(B_1, \ldots, B_n) = \sigma(B_1) \times \cdots \times \sigma(B_n) \subset \mathbb{C}^n,
$$
defined by

$$\sigma(B_1, \ldots, B_n) := \{ (\alpha(B_1), \ldots, \alpha(B_n)) : \alpha \in \tilde{B} \}$$

will be called the joint spectrum of $(B_1, \ldots, B_n)$.

**Corollary 6.4.** Under the assumptions of this chapter, $\tilde{B}$, is a non-empty finite set.

**Proof.** Suppose that $\{B_j\}_{j=1}^k$ is a basis for $B$ (or at least a generating set). Then the map,$$
\tilde{B} \ni \alpha \to (\alpha(B_1), \ldots, \alpha(B_n)) \in \sigma(B_1, \ldots, B_n)
$$
is easily seen to be a bijection. As $\sigma(B_1, \ldots, B_n) \subset \sigma(B_1) \times \cdots \times \sigma(B_n)$ and the latter set is a finite set, it follows that $\#(\tilde{B}) < \infty$. The fact that $\tilde{B}$ is not empty is the part of the content of Proposition 6.1.

The general converse of the second assertion in Proposition 6.1 holds. The full proof of this Proposition is left to the appendix. Here we will prove an easier special case. Another, even slightly easier case (and all that we really need) of the next proposition may be found in Proposition 6.11 where we further restrict to $B$ being a commutative $C^*$-subalgebra of $\text{End}(V)$ where in that proposition $V$ is an inner product space.

**Proposition 6.5.** Let $B$ be a commutative sub-algebra of $\text{End}_\mathbb{C}(V)$ with $I \in B$ and suppose that $\alpha : B \to \mathbb{C}$ is a homomorphism. [We require $\alpha(I) = 1$.] Then there exists $v \in V \setminus \{0\}$ such that $Bv = \alpha(B)v$ for all $B \in B$. 

Lemma 6.7. Let \( \mathcal{B} \) be a subset of \( \mathcal{B} \) which generates \( \mathcal{B} \) and then let \( a_j := \alpha (A_j) \) for \( j \in [n] \). For each \( j \in [n] \) let us define the polynomial,

\[
p_j(z) := \prod_{\lambda \in \sigma (A_j) \setminus \{a_j\}} \frac{z - a_j}{\lambda - a_j}.
\]

This polynomial has the property that \( p_j(\lambda) = 0 \) for all \( \lambda \in \sigma (A_j) \setminus \{a_j\} \) and \( p_j(a_j) = 1 \). Since \( A_j \) is assumed to be diagonalizable we know that

\[
V = \oplus_{\lambda \in \sigma (A_j)} \text{Nul} (A_j - \lambda)
\]

and (you prove) \( p_j (A_j) \) is projection onto \( \text{Nul} (A_j - a_j) \) in this decomposition. Next let \( Q := \prod_{j=1}^{n} p_j (A_j) \), order does not matter as \( \mathcal{B} \) is commutative. Since

\[
\alpha(Q) = \prod_{j=1}^{n} \alpha (p_j (A_j)) = \prod_{j=1}^{n} p_j (\alpha (A_j)) = \prod_{j=1}^{n} p_j (\alpha (a_j)) = 1
\]

we know \( Q \neq 0 \) and so there exists \( w \in V \) so that \( v := Qw \neq 0 \). Again, since \( \{p_j (A_j)\}_{j=1}^{n} \) all commute with one another it follows that \( v \in \text{Ran} (p_j (A_j)) = \text{Nul} (A_j - a_j) \) for each \( j \in [n] \) and this implies \( A_j v = a_j v \) for all \( j \in [n] \). Since the general element \( A \in \mathcal{B} \) is of the form, \( A = p'(A_1, \ldots , A_n) \), for some polynomial \( p \), we conclude that

\[
Av = p'(A_1, \ldots , A_n) v = p(a_1, \ldots , a_n) v = \alpha (A) v.
\]

\[\blacksquare\]

Remark 6.6 (Joint Spectrum Characterization). Altogether Propositions 6.1 and 6.5 shows the following characterization of the joint spectrum from Definition 6.3. If \( \mathcal{B} \subset \text{End} (V) \) is a commutative sub-algebra generated by \( \{B_j\}_{j=1}^{k} \), then

\[
\sigma (B_1, \ldots , B_n) = \{(\lambda_1, \ldots , \lambda_k) \in \mathbb{C}^k : \cap_{j=1}^{k} \text{Nul} (B_j - \lambda_j) \neq \{0\}\}.
\]

That is \( (\lambda_1, \ldots , \lambda_k) \) is an element of \( \sigma (B_1, \ldots , B_n) \) iff there exist \( v \in V \setminus \{0\} \) such that \( B_j v = \lambda_j v \) for all \( j \in [k] \).

Lemma 6.7. The Gelfand map in Definition 5.23 is an algebra homomorphism. The range, \( \hat{\mathcal{B}} := \{\hat{B} : B \in \mathcal{B}\} \), is a sub-algebra which separates points but need not be closed under conjugation. The Gelfand map need not be injective.

\[1\] One could simply let \( \{A_j\}_{j=1}^{n} \) be a basis for \( \mathcal{B} \).

Proof. The homomorphism property is straightforward to verify. \( \hat{I} (\alpha) = \alpha (I) = 1 \) so that \( \hat{I} = I \),

\[
(B_1 + \lambda B_2) \hat{\alpha} = \alpha (B_1 + \lambda B_2) = \alpha (B_1) + \lambda \alpha (B_2) = (\hat{B}_1 + \lambda \hat{B}_2) (\alpha)
\]

and

\[
(\hat{B}_1 \hat{B}_2) \hat{\alpha} = \alpha (B_1 B_2) = \alpha (B_1) \alpha (B_2) = (\hat{B}_1 \hat{B}_2) (\alpha).
\]

If \( \alpha_1 \neq \alpha_2 \) are two distinct elements of \( \hat{\mathcal{B}} \) then by definition there exists \( B \in \mathcal{B} \) so that \( \alpha_1 (B) \neq \alpha_2 (B) \), i.e. \( \hat{B} (\alpha_1) \neq \hat{B} (\alpha_2) \). This shows \( \mathcal{B} \) separates points.

Lastly if \( \hat{B} \equiv 0 \), then \( 0 = \hat{B} (\alpha) = \alpha (B) \) for all \( \alpha \in \hat{\mathcal{B}} \) which implies \( \sigma (B) = \{0\} \) and hence \( B \) must be nilpotent. This certainly indicates that the Gelfand map need not be injective. For an explicit example, let

\[
A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}
\]

so that \( A^2 = 0 \) and hence

\[
\mathcal{B} := \langle A \rangle = \text{span} \{I, A\} = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & a \end{pmatrix} : a, b \in \mathbb{C} \right\}.
\]

In this case we must have

\[
\alpha \left( \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & a \end{pmatrix} \right) = a
\]

and hence \( \mathcal{B} \) consists of this single \( \alpha \). If

\[
B := \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & a \end{pmatrix}
\]

then \( \hat{B} (\alpha) = \alpha (B) = a \) and hence \( \hat{B} \equiv 0 \) iff \( B = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & b \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \) for some \( b \in \mathbb{C} \). The kernel of the Gelfand map is called the radical of \( \mathcal{B} \) and in this case we have shown, \( \text{rad} \mathcal{B} = \mathbb{C} \cdot A \).

\[\blacksquare\]

Notation 6.8 Let \( (V, \langle \cdot , \cdot \rangle) \) is a complex finite dimensional inner product space that \( \mathcal{B} \subset \text{End} (V) \) is unital commutative *-algebra (i.e. \( A \in \mathcal{B} \) implies \( A^* \in \mathcal{B} \)). Further (as \( \dim \mathcal{B} < \infty \)), let \( \{B_j\}_{j=1}^{k} \) which is a basis for \( \mathcal{B} \).

We could construct \( \mathcal{B} \) by choosing commuting normal operators, \( \{B_j\}_{j=1}^{k} \), and then letting \( \mathcal{B} \) be the \( C^* \)-subalgebra of \( \text{End} (V) \) generated by these operators. According to the Fuglede-Putnam Theorem 2.68 it is automatic that the
collection of operators, \( \{B_j, B_j^*\}_{j=1}^k \); all commute with one another and hence \( \mathcal B \) consists of all elements of the form \( p(B_1, \ldots, B_k, B_1^*, \ldots, B_k^*) \) where \( p \) is a polynomial in \( 2k \)-complex variables.

From the results above, if \( \alpha : \mathcal B \to \mathbb C \) is an algebra homomorphism, there exists a vector \( v \in V \setminus \{0\} \) such that \( Bv = \alpha (B) v \) for all \( B \in \mathcal B \). If we further normalize \( v \) to be a unit vector, then

\[
\alpha (B) = \langle Bv, v \rangle \quad \forall \ B \in \mathcal B.
\]  

(6.2)

**Corollary 6.9.** If \( \alpha \in \hat{\mathcal B} \), then \( \alpha : \mathcal B \to \mathbb C \) is a \(*\)-homomorphism, i.e. \( \alpha (B^*) = \overline{\alpha (B)} \) for all \( B \in \mathcal B \).

**Proof.** We simply compute using Eq. (6.2) that from which it follows that

\[
\alpha (B^*) = \langle B^*v, v \rangle = \langle v, Bv \rangle = \overline{\langle Bv, v \rangle} = \overline{\alpha (B)}.
\]

\[\square\]

**Remark 6.10 (Optional).** **Question:** why don’t we use characters when \( \mathcal B \) is non-commutative?

**Answer:** they may vary well not exists. For example if \( \mathcal B \) is all \( 2 \times 2 \) matrices and \( \alpha \) is a character, then \( \alpha ([A, B]) = 0 \) for all \( A, B \in \mathcal B \). When

\[
B = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}, \quad A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad A' = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}
\]

we find

\[
[A, B] = \begin{bmatrix} -b & 0 \\ a - d & -c \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad [A', B] = \begin{bmatrix} c & d - a \\ 0 & -c \end{bmatrix}.
\]

Taking \( b = 0 \) in the first case and \( c = 0 \) in the second case we see that span \( \{[A, B] : A, B \in \mathcal B\} \) contains \( A, A' \), and then it also follows that it contains

\[
\begin{bmatrix} c & 0 \\ 0 & -c \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{for all} \ c \in \mathbb C.
\]

In other words, span \( \{[A, B] : A, B \in \mathcal B\} \) is precisely the set of trace free matrices. Thus it follows that \( \alpha (A) = 0 \) whenever \( \text{tr} \ A = 0 \). For a general matrix, \( A \), we then have \( A - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} (A) I \) is trace free and therefore,

\[
0 = \alpha \left( A - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} (A) I \right) = \alpha (A) - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} (A).
\]

Thus the only possible choice for \( \alpha \) is \( \alpha (A) = \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} (A) \). However, this functional is not multiplicative.

**A point to keep in mind below.** When \( \mathcal B \) is a non-commutative Banach algebra and if \( M \subset \mathcal B \) is a proper two sided-ideal, then \( M \) can not contain any element, \( b \in \mathcal B \), which have either a right or a left inverse. Whereas when \( \mathcal B \) is commutative, this condition reduces to the statement that \( M \) can not contain any invertible elements, i.e. \( \mathcal B \subset \mathcal S \) where \( \mathcal S \) is the collections of non-invertible elements. In particular if we are expecting to use characters to find the spectrum of operators, \( b \in \mathcal B \), as \( \{\alpha (b) : \alpha \text{ runs through characters of } \mathcal B\} \) we are going to be sorely disappointed as we see even in the finite \( 2 \times 2 \) matrix algebra.

As another such example, let \( S : \ell^2 \to \ell^2 \) be the shift operator and \( S^* \) be it’s adjoint,

\[
S (x_1, x_2, \ldots) = (0, x_1, x_2, \ldots), \quad \text{and} \quad S^* (x_1, x_2, \ldots) = (x_2, x_3, \ldots)
\]

and suppose that \( \alpha \) is a character on some algebra containing \( \{S, S^*\} \). Since \( SS^* = I \neq S^* S \), it follows that \( 1 = \alpha (I) = \alpha (S) \alpha (S^*) \) even though neither \( S \) nor \( S^* \) are invertible.

**Proposition 6.11.** Let \( \mathcal B \) be a unital commutative \(*\)-subalgebra of \( \text{End} (V) \). If \( \alpha \in \hat{\mathcal B} \), there exists \( v \in V \setminus \{0\} \) such that

\[
Bv = \alpha (B) v \quad \forall \ B \in \mathcal B.
\]  

(6.3)

**Proof.** This is of course a special case of Proposition 6.5. Nevertheless, as the proof of this special case is a fair bit easier we will give another proof here. Moreover, the idea of this proof will be used again later.

Let \( \{B_1, \ldots, B_k\} \subset \mathcal B \) be a generating set for \( \mathcal B \), let \( \lambda_j := \alpha (B_j) \) for \( 1 \leq j \leq k \), and define

\[
Q := \sum_{j=1}^{k} (B_j - \lambda_j)^* (B_j - \lambda_j) \in \mathcal B.
\]

We then have

\[
\alpha (Q) = \sum_{j=1}^{k} \alpha ((B_j - \lambda_j)^* (B_j - \lambda_j)) \]

\[
= \sum_{j=1}^{k} \alpha (B_j - \lambda_j)^* \alpha (B_j - \lambda_j) = \sum_{j=1}^{k} |\alpha (B_j - \lambda_j)|^2 = 0.
\]

If \( Q^{-1} \) were to exist, Lemma 3.9 would imply that \( Q^{-1} \in \mathcal B \) and therefore,

\[
1 = \alpha (I) = \alpha (QQ^{-1}) = \alpha (Q) \alpha (Q^{-1})
\]

which would contradict the assertion that \( \alpha (Q) = 0 \). Thus we conclude \( Q \) is not invertible and therefore there exists \( v \in V \setminus \{0\} \) so that \( Qv = 0 \). Since
it follows that $B_j v = \lambda_j v$ for all $j$. As the general element $B \in \mathcal{B}$ may be written as, $B = P(B_1, \ldots, B_k)$ for some polynomial $P$, it follows that $B v = P(\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_k) v = \alpha(P(B_1, \ldots, B_k)) v = \alpha(B) v$ for all $B \in \mathcal{B}$.

\textbf{Notation 6.12} For each $\alpha \in \tilde{\mathcal{B}}$, let $V_\alpha := \{v \in V : B v = \alpha(B) v \text{ for all } B \in \mathcal{B}\}$.

\textbf{Lemma 6.13.} Let $\mathcal{B}$ be a commutative $*$-subalgebra of $\text{End}(V)$ with unit. The inner product space, $V$, admits the orthogonal direct sum decomposition:

$$V = \bigoplus_{\alpha \in \tilde{\mathcal{B}}} V_\alpha.$$  

\textbf{Proof.} If $\alpha_1$ and $\alpha_2$ are distinct elements of $\tilde{\mathcal{B}}$, then there exists $B \in \mathcal{B}$ so that $\lambda_1 := \alpha_1(B) \neq \alpha_2(B) := \lambda_2$. Thus if $v_j \in V_{\alpha_j}$, then

$$\lambda_1 \langle v_1, v_2 \rangle = \langle B v_1, v_2 \rangle = \langle v_1, B^* v_2 \rangle = \langle v_1, \alpha_2(B^*) v_2 \rangle = \langle v_1, \lambda_2 v_2 \rangle \neq \lambda_2 \langle v_1, v_2 \rangle$$

from which it follows that $\langle v_1, v_2 \rangle = 0$. This shows $V_{\alpha_1} \perp V_{\alpha_2}$.

Let $V_0 := \bigoplus_{\alpha \in \tilde{\mathcal{B}}} V_\alpha$ and $V_1 := \bigoplus_{\alpha \in \tilde{\mathcal{B}}} V_\alpha^\perp$. Since $V_0$ is a $\mathcal{B}$-invariant subset of $V$ it follows that $V_1$ is also $\mathcal{B}$-invariant. Indeed,

$$\langle BV_1, V_0 \rangle = \langle V_1, B^* V_0 \rangle \subset \langle V_1, V_0 \rangle = \{0\} \text{ for all } B \in \mathcal{B}.$$  

If $V_1 \neq \{0\}$, we may restrict $\mathcal{B}$ to $V_1$ and use Proposition 6.1 to find a simultaneous eigenvector $v_1 \in V_1 \setminus \{0\}$ of $\mathcal{B}$. Associated to this vector is the character, $\alpha$, of $\mathcal{B}$ such that $B v_1 = \alpha(B) v_1$ for all $B \in \mathcal{B}$. But this then leads to the contradiction that $v_1 \in V_0 \subset V_0$.

\textbf{Notation 6.14} For each $\alpha \in \tilde{\mathcal{B}}$, let $P_\alpha : V \to V$ be orthogonal projection onto $V_\alpha$.

\footnote{If $\mathcal{B}$ were non-commutative, we would have to take $P$ to be a non-commutative polynomial.}

\footnote{Here is where we use the assumption that $\mathcal{B}$ is commutative.}

For $v \in V$, we have, with $v_\alpha = P_\alpha v$, that $v = \sum_{\alpha \in \mathcal{B}} v_\alpha$ and so for $B \in \mathcal{B}$,

$$B v = \sum_{\alpha \in \mathcal{B}} B v_\alpha = \sum_{\alpha \in \mathcal{B}} \alpha(B) v_\alpha = \sum_{\alpha \in \mathcal{B}} \alpha(B) P_\alpha v.$$  

Thus we have shown that

$$B = \sum_{\alpha \in \mathcal{B}} \alpha(B) P_\alpha \text{ for all } B \in \mathcal{B}. \quad (6.4)$$

\textbf{Proposition 6.15.} If $X$ is a finite set and $\mathcal{A}$ is a sub-algebra of $C(X)$ that separates points and contains 1, then $\mathcal{A} = C(X)$. [We do not need to assume that $\mathcal{A}$ is closed under conjugation, this comes for free in this finite dimensional setting!]

\textbf{Proof.} By assumption for each $x, y \in X$ there exists $f \in \mathcal{A}$ so that $f(x) \neq f(y)$. We then let

$$f_y := \frac{1}{f(x) - f(y)} [f - f(y)] 1 \in \mathcal{A}$$

where now $f_y(x) = 1$ and $f_y(y) = 0$. Thus it follows that

$$\delta_x := \prod_{y \neq x} f_y \in \mathcal{A}$$

where $\delta_x(y) = 1_{x=y}$ for all $y \in X$. As $\{\delta_x\}_{x \in X}$ is a basis for $C(X)$, the proof is complete.

\textbf{Theorem 6.16.} The Gelfand map $^* -$ is an isomorphism of $*$-algebras.

\textbf{Proof.} Let $\mathcal{A} := \{B : B \in \mathcal{B}\}$ be the range of the Gelfand map. Then $\mathcal{A}$ is a sub-algebra of $C(\tilde{\mathcal{B}})$ which contains 1. If $\alpha_1, \alpha_2$ are two points in $\tilde{\mathcal{B}}$ such that $\tilde{B}(\alpha_1) = \tilde{B}(\alpha_2)$ for all $B \in \mathcal{B}$ then

$$\alpha_1(B) = \tilde{B}(\alpha_1) = \tilde{B}(\alpha_2) = \alpha_2(B) \text{ for all } B \in \mathcal{B}$$

from which it follows that $\alpha_1 = \alpha_2$. This shows that $\mathcal{A}$ separates points and hence by the finite set version of the Stone-Wierstrass theorem, see Proposition 6.15, $\mathcal{A} = C(\tilde{\mathcal{B}})$ and so the Gelfand map is surjective. Lastly if $\tilde{B} \equiv 0$, then $\alpha(B) = 0$ for all $\alpha \in \tilde{\mathcal{B}}$ and hence $B = 0$ by Eq. (6.4).

\textbf{Corollary 6.17.} For each $\alpha \in \tilde{\mathcal{B}}$, $P_\alpha \in \mathcal{B}$. 

\footnote{If $\mathcal{B}$ were non-commutative, we would have to take $P$ to be a non-commutative polynomial.}

\footnote{Here is where we use the assumption that $\mathcal{B}$ is commutative.}
Proof. Let $Q_\alpha \in \hat{B}$ be the unique element such $\hat{Q}_\alpha = \delta_\alpha$, i.e. $\alpha' (Q_\alpha) = 1_{\alpha=\alpha'}$. Then by Eq. \((6.4)\)
\[
Q_\alpha = \sum_{\alpha' \in \hat{B}} \alpha' (Q_\alpha) P_{\alpha'} = P_\alpha.
\]

Corollary 6.18. For $f \in C \left( \hat{B} \right)$, let
\[
f^\vee = \sum_{\alpha \in \hat{B}} f (\alpha) \cdot P_\alpha \in \mathcal{B}.
\]
Then $C \left( \hat{B} \right) \ni f \mapsto f^\vee \in \mathcal{B}$ is the inverse to the Gelfand map.

Proof. We have
\[
(f^\vee)^\sim = \sum_{\alpha \in \hat{B}} f (\alpha) \cdot \hat{P}_\alpha = \sum_{\alpha \in \hat{B}} f (\alpha) \cdot \delta_\alpha = f.
\]

6.1 Appendix: Full Proof of Proposition \([6.5]\)

Proof of Proposition \([6.5]\). Suppose that $\mathcal{B}$ is generated by \(\{A_j\}_{j=1}^{k}\) and let $a_j = \alpha (A_j)$. Let us further choose an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ sufficiently large so that
\[
\text{Nul} \left( [A_j - \lambda]^{N+1} \right) = \text{Nul} \left( [A_j - \lambda]^N \right) \quad \forall \ 1 \leq j \leq k \text{ and } \lambda \in \sigma (A_j).
\]
Thus $\text{Nul} \left( [A_j - \lambda]^N \right)$ is the generalized $\lambda$-eigenspace of $A_j$ for each $j$ and $\lambda \in \sigma (A_j)$ and recall that
\[
V = \oplus_{\lambda \in \sigma (A_j)} \text{Nul} \left( [A_j - \lambda]^N \right)
\]
for each $j$. We then let
\[
p_j (z) = \prod_{\lambda \in \sigma (A_j) \setminus \{a_j\}} \left( \frac{z - \lambda}{a_j - \lambda} \right)^N
\]
so that $\alpha (p_j (A_j)) = p_j (a_j) = 1$, $p_j (A_j)$ annihilates $\text{Nul} \left( [A_j - \lambda]^N \right)$ for every $\lambda \in \sigma (A_j) \setminus \{a_j\}$, and

for each $j$. From this it follows that $1 = \alpha \left( \prod_{j=1}^{k} p_j (A_j) \right)$ and hence there exists $v \neq 0$ in $V$ so that
\[
\prod_{j=1}^{k} p_j (A_j) v = v.
\]

As the $\{p_j (A_j)\}_{j=1}^{k}$ commute along with the above remarks we learn that $v \in \cap_{j=1}^{k} \text{Nul} \left( (A_j - a_j)^N \right)$. We now have to modify $v$ a bit to produce an non-zero element of $\cap_{j=1}^{k} \text{Nul} (A_j - a_j)$ which suffices to complete the proof of the proposition.

Start by choosing $0 \leq \ell_1 < N$ so that
\[
v_1 = (A_1 - a_1)^{\ell_1} v \in \text{Nul} (A_1 - a_1) \setminus \{0\}.
\]
Applying $(A_1 - a_1)^{\ell_1}$ to Eq. \((6.5)\) (while using $p_1 (A_1) v_1 = p_1 (a) v_1 = v_1$) shows,
\[
\prod_{j=2}^{k} p_j (A_j) v_1 = v_1.
\]

Next we choose $\ell_2$ so that
\[
v_2 = (A_2 - a_2)^{\ell_2} v_1 \in \text{Nul} (A_2 - a_2) \setminus \{0\}.
\]
Applying $(A_2 - a_2)^{\ell_2}$ to Eq. \((6.6)\) shows,
\[
\prod_{j=3}^{k} p_j (A_j) v_2 = v_2.
\]

Let us note that $A_2 v_2 = a_2 v_2$ and
\[
A_1 v_2 = A_1 (A_2 - a_2)^{\ell_2} v_1 = (A_2 - a_2)^{\ell_2} A_1 v_1 = a_1 (A_2 - a_2)^{\ell_2} v_1 = a_1 v_2
\]
and so
\[
v_2 \in \text{Nul} (A_2 - a_2) \cap \text{Nul} (A_1 - a_1) \cap \left[ \cap_{j=3}^{k} \text{Nul} \left( [A_j - \lambda]^N \right) \right].
\]
Again choosing $0 \leq \ell_3 < N$ so that
\[
v_3 = (A_3 - a_3)^{\ell_3} v_2 \in \text{Nul} (A_3 - a_3) \setminus \{0\}.
\]
Applying $(A_3 - a_3)^{\ell_3}$ to Eq. \((6.6)\) shows,
\prod_{j=4}^{k} p_j (A_j) v_3 = v_3. \quad (6.8)

Working as above it not follows that \( v_3 \neq 0 \) and

\[
v_3 \in \bigcap_{j=1}^{3} \text{Nul}(A_j - a_j) \cap \left( \bigcap_{j=4}^{k} \text{Nul}(A_j - \lambda)^N \right).
\]

Continuing this way inductively eventually produces \( 0 \neq v_k \in \bigcap_{j=1}^{k} \text{Nul}(A_j - a_j) \).
Commutative Banach Algebras with Identity

Henceforth $B$ will denote a unital commutative Banach algebra over $\mathbb{C}$. (A good reference is Vol II of Dunford and Schwartz.) Recall from Definition 7.17 that a $\text{spec}(B) = \hat{B}$ is the set of characters, $\alpha : B \to \mathbb{C}$, where $\alpha$ is a character if it is, non-zero, linear, and multiplicative. [See Corollary 2.63 for more motivation for the terminology.]

7.1 General Commutative Banach Algebra Spectral Properties

Lemma 7.1. If $\alpha \in \hat{B} = \text{spec}(B)$, then $\alpha(a) \in \sigma(a)$ for all $a \in B$.

Proof. Let $\lambda = \alpha(a)$ and $b = a - \lambda 1$ so that $\alpha(b) = 0$. If $b^{-1}$ existed in $B$ we would have

$$1 = \alpha(1) = \alpha(b^{-1}b) = \alpha(b^{-1}) \alpha(b)$$

which would imply $\alpha(b) \neq 0$. Thus $b$ is not invertible and hence $\lambda = \alpha(a) \in \sigma(a)$.

Proposition 7.2 (Continuity of characters). Every character $\alpha$ of $B$ is continuous and moreover $\|\alpha\| \leq 1$ with equality if $\|1\| = 1$ which we always assume here.

Proof. By Lemma 7.1 $\alpha(a) \in \sigma(a)$ for all $a \in B$ and therefore,

$$|\alpha(a)| \leq r(a) \leq \|a\|.$$ 

Definition 7.3 (Maximal Ideals). An ideal $J \subset B$ is a maximal ideal if $J \neq B$ and there is no proper ideal in $B$ containing $J$.

Example 7.4. If $\alpha \in \hat{B}$, then $J_\alpha := \text{Null}(\alpha)$ is a maximal ideal. Indeed, it is easily verified that is proper ideal. To see that it is maximal, suppose that $b \in B \setminus J_\alpha$ and let $\lambda = \alpha(b)$ so that $\alpha(b - \lambda) = 0$, i.e. $b - \lambda \in J_\alpha$. This shows that $B = J_\alpha \oplus \mathbb{C}1$ and therefore $J_\alpha$ is maximal.

Notation 7.5 Let $S := B \setminus B_{\text{inv}}$ be the singular elements of $B$. [Notice that $S$ is a closed subset of $B$.]

Lemma 7.6. If $J$ is a proper ideal of $B$, then $J \subset B \setminus B_{\text{inv}}$. Moreover, the closure $(\bar{J})$ of $J$ is also a proper ideal of $B$. In particular if $J \subset B$ is a maximal ideal, then $J$ is necessarily closed.

Proof. If $J$ is any ideal in $B$ that contains an element, $b$, of $B_{\text{inv}}$, then $J$ contains $b^{-1}b = 1$ and hence $J = B$. Thus if $J \not\subset B$ is any proper ideal then $J \subset B \setminus B_{\text{inv}}$. As $B \setminus B_{\text{inv}}$ is a closed, $\bar{J} \subset B \setminus B_{\text{inv}}$. Moreover if $b = \lim_{n \to \infty} b_n \in J$ with $b_n \in J$ and $x \in B$, then $xb = \lim_{n \to \infty} xb_n \in J$ as $xb_n \in J$ for all $n$. Lastly if $J$ is a maximal ideal, then $J \subset J \subset B$ and hence by maximality of $J$ we have $J = \bar{J}$.

Lemma 7.7. If $B$ is a commutative Banach algebra with identity, then:

1. Every proper ideal $J_0 \subset B$ is contained in a (not necessarily unique) maximal ideal.
2. An element $a \in B$ is invertible iff $a$ does not belong to any maximal ideal.

In other words,

$$S := B \setminus B_{\text{inv}} = \cup (\text{maximal ideals}) \tag{7.1}$$

Proof. We take each item in turn.

1. Let $\mathcal{F}$ denote the collection of proper ideals of $B$ which contain $J_0$. Order $\mathcal{F}$ by set inclusion and notice that if $\{J_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in A}$ is a totally ordered subset of $\mathcal{F}$ then $J := \cup_{\alpha \in A} J_\alpha \subset S$ is a proper ideal ($1 \notin J_\alpha$ for all $\alpha$) containing $J_0$, i.e. $J \in \mathcal{F}$. So by Zorn’s Lemma, $\mathcal{F}$ contains a maximal element $J$ which is the desired maximal ideal.

2. If $a \in S$, then the ideal, $(a)$, generated by $a$ is a proper ideal for otherwise $1 \in (a)$ and there would exists $b \in B$ such that $ba = 1$, i.e. $a^{-1}$ would exist. By item 1. we can find a maximal ideal, $J$, which contains $(a)$ and hence $a$. Conversely if $a$ is some maximal ideal, $J$, then $a^{-1}$ can not exists since otherwise $1 = a^{-1}a \in J$. This verifies the identity in Eq. (7.1).

As is well known from basic algebra, the point of ideals are that they are precisely the subspaces which are the possible null spaces of algebra isomorphisms.
Exercise 7.1. Suppose \( B \) is a Banach algebra (not necessarily commutative) and \( K \subseteq B \) is a closed proper two sided ideal in \( B \). Show (items 1. and 3. are the most important):

1. \( B/K \) is a Banach algebra.
2. The bijection of closed subspaces in the factor Theorem \( A.24 \) given by,
\[
\left\{ \begin{array}{l}
\text{closed subspaces of } B \text{ containing } K \\
\end{array} \right\} \ni N \rightarrow \pi(N) \in \left\{ \begin{array}{l}
\text{closed subspaces of } \pi(B/K) \\
\end{array} \right\},
\]
restricts to a bijection of two sided closed ideals in \( B \) containing \( K \) to two sided closed ideals in \( B/K \).
3. If \( \|1\|_B = 1 \), then \( \|\pi(1)\|_{B/K} = 1 \).

Proposition 7.8. If \( J \subset B \) is a maximal ideal, then \( B = J \oplus \mathbb{C}1 \), where \( 1 = 1_B \).

Proof. Let \( \pi : B \rightarrow B/J \) be the quotient map and equip \( B/J \) with the quotient Banach norm,
\[
\|\pi(b)\| = \|b + J\| := \inf_{a \in J} \|b + a\|.
\]

Then by Exercise 7.1 \( B/J \) is a unital Banach algebra. Let \( a \in B \) and \( \bar{a} := \pi(a) \in B/J \) and \( \lambda \in \sigma(\bar{a}) \) and set \( b := a - \lambda \). Then \( \bar{b} = \pi(b) = \bar{a} - \lambda \) is not invertible in \( B/J \) and therefore \( (b) \) is a proper ideal in \( B/J \). If \( \bar{b} \neq 0 \), then \( \pi^{-1}(\bar{b}) \) would be a proper ideal in \( B \) which was strictly bigger than \( J \) contradicting the maximality of \( J \). Therefore we conclude \( 0 = \bar{b} = \pi(b) = \pi(a - \lambda) \) which implies \( a - \lambda \in J \). Thus we have shown \( a = \lambda 1 \mod J \), i.e. \( B = J \oplus \mathbb{C}1 \). Since \( 1 \notin J \) as \( J \) is a proper ideal the proof is complete.

Theorem 7.9 (Gelfand – Mazur). If \( A \) is a complex Banach algebra \( (A) \) with unit which is a division algebra\(^1\), then \( A \) is isomorphic to \( \mathbb{C} \). In more detail we have \( A = \mathbb{C} \cdot 1_A \).

Proof. Let \( x \in A \) and \( \lambda \in \sigma(x) \). Then \( x - \lambda 1 \) is not invertible. Thus \( x - \lambda 1 = 0 \) so \( x = \lambda 1 \). Therefore every element of \( A \) is a complex multiple of 1, i.e. \( A = \mathbb{C} \cdot 1 \).

Proposition 7.10 (Optional). If \( B \) is a commutative Banach algebra with identity, then:

1. If \( \{0\} \) is the only proper ideal in \( B \) then \( B = \mathbb{C} \cdot 1 \).
2. If \( J \) is a maximal ideal in \( B \) then \( B/J = \mathbb{C} \cdot 1_{B/J} \) is a field.

\(^1\) Recall that \( A \) is a division algebra iff every non-zero element is invertible.

Proof. 1. If \( a \in B \) let \( (a) \) denote the ideal generated by \( a \). If \( a \neq 0 \) we must have \( (a) = B \) and in particular \( a \) must be invertible. Moreover, because we are working over \( \mathbb{C} \), \( B = \mathbb{C} \cdot 1 \) by the Gelfand – Mazur Theorem (7.9).

2. Since the ideals of \( B/J \) are in one to one correspondence with ideals \( J \subset B \) such that \( J \subset J \), it follows that \( J \) is a maximal ideal in \( B \) iff \( (0) \) is the only proper ideal in \( B/J \). The result now follows from item 1.

Lemma 7.11. The map
\[
\tilde{B} \ni \alpha \rightarrow \text{Nul}(\alpha) \in \{ \text{maximal ideals in } B \}
\]
is a bijection. In particular, \( \tilde{B} \neq \emptyset \) because of Lemma 7.7.

Proof. If \( \alpha \) is a character then \( \text{Nul}(\alpha) \) is a maximal ideal of \( B \) by Example 7.4. Conversely if \( J \subset B \) is a maximal ideal, then by Proposition 7.8 \( B = \mathbb{C} \cdot 1 + J \) and we may define \( \alpha : B \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \) by
\[
\alpha(\lambda 1 + a) = \lambda \forall \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \text{ and } a \in J.
\]

It is now easily verified that \( \alpha \in \tilde{B} \) and clearly we have \( \text{Nul}(\alpha) = J \).

Finally if \( \alpha, \beta \in \tilde{B} \) and \( J = \text{Nul} \alpha = \text{Nul} \beta \), then for \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \) and \( a \in J \) we have,
\[
\alpha(\lambda 1 + a) = \lambda = \beta(\lambda 1 + a)
\]
which shows (as \( B = \mathbb{C} \cdot 1 + J \)) that \( \alpha = \beta \).

Corollary 7.12. If \( B \) is a commutative Banach algebra with identity, then \( b \in S := B \setminus B_{inv} \) iff \( 0 \in \sigma(b) \) iff there exists \( \alpha \in \tilde{B} \) such that \( \alpha(b) = 0 \). More generally,
\[
\sigma(a) = \{ \alpha(a) : \alpha \in \tilde{B} \}.
\]

Proof. The first assertion follows from Lemmas 7.7 and 7.11. It can also be seen by Proposition 7.19 below. For the second we have \( \lambda \in \sigma(a) \) iff \( b = a - \lambda \in S \) iff \( 0 = \alpha(b) = \alpha(a) - \lambda \) for some \( \alpha \in \tilde{B} \).

Notation 7.13. Because of Lemma 7.11 \( \tilde{B} \) is sometimes referred to as the maximal ideal space of \( B \).

Corollary 7.14 (\( \tilde{B} \) is a compact Hausdorff space). \( \tilde{B} \) is a \( w^* \)-closed subset of the unit ball in \( B^* \). In particular, \( \tilde{B} \) is a compact Hausdorff space in the \( w^* \)-topology. [Here \( w^* \) is short for weak-*.

Proof. Since \( \{ \xi \in B^* : \xi(ab) = \xi(a) \xi(b) \} \) for \( a, b \in B \) fixed and \( \xi \in B^* : \xi(1) = 1 \) are closed in the \( w^* \)-topology,
\[
\tilde{B} = \{ \xi \in B^* : \xi(1) = 1 \} \cap \bigcap_{a, b \in B} \{ \xi \in B^* : \xi(ab) = \xi(a) \xi(b) \}.
\]
is $w^*$ closed being the intersection of closed sets. Since $\hat{B}$ is a closed subset of a compact Hausdorff space (namely the unit ball in $B^*$ with the $w^*$ topology), $\hat{B}$ is a compact Hausdorff space as well.

**Remark 7.15.** If $B$ is a commutative Banach algebra without identity and we define a character as a continuous nonzero homomorphism $\alpha : B \to \mathbb{C}$. Then the preceding arguments shows that $\hat{B} \subset \text{(unit ball of } B^*)$ but may not be closed because 0 is a limit point of $\hat{B}$. In this case $\hat{B}$ is locally compact.

We now recall and refine the definition of the Gelfand map given in Definition 5.23.

**Definition 7.16 (Gelfand Map).** For $a \in B$, let $\hat{a} \in C(\hat{B})$ be the function defined by $\hat{a}(\alpha) = \alpha(a)$ for all $\alpha \in \hat{B}$. The map

$$B \ni a \mapsto \hat{a} \in C(\hat{B})$$

is called the canonical mapping or Gelfand mapping of $B$ into $C(\hat{B})$.

**Definition 7.17.** Given a commutative Banach algebra $(B)$ with identity we define:

1. The radical of $B$ is the intersection of all the maximal ideals in $B$,

$$\text{rad } (B) = \cap \{ J : J \text{ is a maximal ideal in } B \}.$$  

   [The radical of $B$ is the intersection of closed ideals and therefore it is also a closed ideal. Let us further note that $a \in \text{rad } (B)$ if $\alpha(a) = 0$ for all $\alpha \in \hat{B}$.]

2. $B$ is called semi-simple if $\text{rad } (B) = \{ 0 \}$. [In our finite dimensional examples in §5.3 are semi-simple.]

**Theorem 7.18 (Gelfand).** Let $B$ be a unital commutative Banach algebra. Then the canonical mapping, $B \ni a \mapsto \hat{a} \in C(\hat{B})$, is a contractive homomorphism from $B$ into $C(\hat{B})$ with $\text{rad } (B)$ being its null-space. In particular, $(\hat{\cdot})$ is injective if $\text{rad } (B) = \{ 0 \}$ i.e. if $B$ is semi-simple.

**Proof.** Let $a, b \in B$ and $\alpha \in \hat{B}$. Since

$$\hat{a}(\alpha) = \alpha(ab) = \alpha(a)\alpha(b) = \hat{a}(\alpha)\hat{b}(\alpha),$$

$B \ni a \mapsto \hat{a} \in C(\hat{B})$ is a homomorphism. Moreover,

$$|\hat{a}(\alpha)| = |\alpha(a)| \leq \|a\| \text{ for all } \alpha \in \hat{B}.$$ 

Hence $\|\hat{a}\| \leq \|a\|$, i.e. canonical mapping is a contraction. Finally, $\hat{a} = 0$ iff $\alpha(a) = 0$ for all $\alpha \in \hat{B}$ if $a$ is in every maximal ideal, i.e. iff $a \in \text{rad } (B)$.

**Proposition 7.19.** If $B$ is a commutative Banach algebra with identity, then

1. $\hat{1}$ is the constant function $1$ in $1 \in C(\hat{B})$.
2. For $a \in B$,

$$\sigma(a) = \text{Ran}(\hat{a}) = \{ \alpha(a) : \alpha \in \hat{B} \}$$

3. The spectral mapping Theorem 3.42 is a consequence of the previous assertion.
4. The spectral radius of $a \in B$ satisfies (compare with Exercise 3.3),

$$r(a) = \|\hat{a}\| \leq \|a\|, \quad r(a + b) \leq r(a) + r(b), \quad \text{and } r(ab) \leq r(a)r(b).$$

5. The radical of $B$ is given by

$$\text{rad } (B) = \{ a \in B : r(a) = 0 \}.$$ 

6. The canonical map $\hat{\cdot} : B \to C(\hat{B})$ is an isometry (i.e. $\|\hat{a}\| = \|a\|$ for all $a \in B$) iff $\|\hat{a}\|^2 = \|a\|^2$ for all $a \in B$.

7. If $\|\hat{a}\|^2 = \|a\|^2$ for all $a \in B$, then $B$ is semi-simple.

**Proof.** We take each item in turn.

1. $\hat{1}(\alpha) = \alpha(1) = 1$ for all $\alpha \in \hat{B}$, so $\hat{1}$ is the constant function $1 \in C(\hat{B})$.
2. This was proved in Corollary ??.
3. If $p \in \mathbb{C}[z]$ is a polynomial, $a \in B$, and $\alpha \in \hat{B}$, then

$$\hat{p}(\alpha) = p(\hat{a}(\alpha)) = p(\alpha(a)) = p(\hat{a}(\alpha)) = (p \circ \hat{a})(\alpha)$$

and therefore

$$\sigma(p(a)) = \text{Ran}(\hat{p}(\hat{a})) = \text{Ran}(p \circ \hat{a}) = p(\text{Ran}(\hat{a})) = p(\sigma(a)).$$

4. This is an easy direct consequence of the spectral mapping theorem of item 3. Indeed we always know $r(a) \leq \|a\|$ and

$$r(a) = \sup \{ |\lambda| : \lambda \in \sigma(a) \} = \sup \{ |\alpha(a)| : \alpha \in \hat{B} \} = \sup \{ |\hat{a}(\alpha)| : \alpha \in \hat{B} \} = \|\hat{a}\| \leq \|a\|.$$ 

The remaining inequalities are now easily proved as follows:

$$r(ab) = \|\hat{a}\| \cdot \|\hat{b}\| \leq \|\hat{a}\| \|\hat{b}\| = r(a)r(b)$$

and similarly,

$$r(a + b) = \|\hat{a} + \hat{b}\| \leq \|\hat{a}\| + \|\hat{b}\| = r(a) + r(b).$$
Using Theorem 7.18 and item 2. of this proposition, we have $a \in \text{rad} (B)$ iff $\hat{a} = 0$ iff $\|\hat{a}\|_\infty = 0$ iff $r (a) = 0$.

By item 4., we have $\|\hat{a}\| = \|a\|$ iff $r (a) = \|a\|$. If $r (a) = \|a\|$ for all $a \in B$ then (by the spectral mapping Theorem 3.42)

$$\|a^2\| = r (a^2) = r (a)^2 = \|a\|^2.$$  

Conversely if $\|a^2\| = \|a\|^2$ for all $a \in B$, then by induction, for all $a \in B$ we also have

$$\|a^{2n}\| = \|a\|^{2n} \iff \|a\| = \|a^{2n}\|^{1/2n} \text{ for all } n \in \mathbb{N}.$$  

The last equality along with Corollary 3.45 gives,

$$\|a\| = \lim_{n \to \infty} \|a^{2n}\|^{1/2n} = r (a) \ \forall \ a \in B.$$  

By item 6, the map $a \to \hat{a}$ is isometric and hence its null-space, $\text{rad} (B)$, must be $\{0\}$. Alternatively, item 6. gives $\|a\| = \|\hat{a}\|_\infty = r (a)$ and therefore,

$$\text{rad} (B) = \{a \in B : r (a) = 0\} = \{a \in B : \|a\| = 0\} = \{0\}.$$  

Remark 7.20. If $B$ does not have a unit then a similar theory can be developed in which $\hat{B}$ is locally compact.

7.2 Commutative Banach $*$-Algebras (over complexes)

For the rest of this chapter we will assume that $B$ is a commutative unital Banach algebra with an involution, $(\ast)$. The main goal of this section is to prove Theorem 7.28 which asserts that the Gelfand map, $B \ni b \to \hat{b} \in C \left( \hat{B} \right),$ is an isometric isomorphism of $C^*$-algebras. Our first order of business towards proving this theorem is to give conditions on $(B, \ast)$ so that the Gelfand-map is a $\ast$-homomorphism.

Proposition 7.21. Let $B$ be a commutative, unital, and $\ast$-algebra. The following are equivalent:

1. $B$ is symmetric, i.e. $a^* a + 1$ is invertible for all $a \in B$.
2. Every Hermitian element, $a \in B$, is real, i.e. if $a^* = a$, then $\sigma (a) \subset \mathbb{R}$.
3. If $a \in \hat{B}$ then $\alpha (a^*) = \overline{\alpha (a)}$ for all $a \in B$. [Alternatively put the Gelfand map, $B \ni a \to \hat{a} \in C \left( \hat{B} \right)$ is a $\ast$-homomorphism of Banach algebras, i.e. $\hat{a}^* = \overline{\hat{a}}$ for all $a \in B$.]

4. Every maximal ideal, $J$, of $B$ is a $\ast$-ideal, i.e. if $a \in J$ then $a^* \in J$.

**Proof.**

1) $\Rightarrow$ 2) This is Proposition 7.19.

2) $\Rightarrow$ 3) Let $a \in B$,

$$b = \text{Re} a := \frac{1}{2} (a + a^*) \text{ and } c = \text{Im} a := \frac{1}{2i} (a - a^*).$$

Then $b$ and $c$ are Hermitian and so by Proposition 7.19 $\alpha (b) \in \sigma (b) \subset \mathbb{R}$ and $\alpha (c) \in \sigma (c) \subset \mathbb{R}$ for all $a \in \hat{B}$. Since $a = b + ic$ it follows that

$$\alpha (a^*) = \alpha (b - ic) = \alpha (b) - ic (c) = \alpha (b) + i \alpha (c) = \alpha (a).$$

3) $\Rightarrow$ 1). For any $a \in B$ and $\alpha \in \hat{B}$, we now have,

$$\alpha (a^* a) = \alpha (a^*) \alpha (a) = \alpha (a) \alpha (a) |a (a)|^2$$

and therefore

$$\alpha (1 + a^* a) = 1 + |a (a)|^2 \neq 0.$$  

As this is true for all $\alpha \in \hat{B}$ we conclude that $0 \notin \sigma (1 + a^* a)$ by Proposition 7.19 i.e. $1 + a^* a$ is invertible.

3) $\Rightarrow$ 4) Let $J$ be a maximal ideal and let $\alpha \in \hat{B}$ be the unique character such that $\text{Nul} (\alpha) = J$, see Lemma 7.11. Since $\alpha (a) = 0$ iff $0 = \overline{\alpha (a)} = \alpha (a^*)$ and $J = \text{Nul} (\alpha)$, it follows that $a \in J$ if $a^* \in J$.

4) $\Rightarrow$ 3) Given $a \in B$ and $\alpha \in \hat{B}$, let $b = a - \alpha (a) \in \text{Nul} (\alpha) =: J$. By assumption we have $a^* - \overline{\alpha (a)} = b^* \in J = \text{Nul} (\alpha)$ and therefore,

$$0 = \alpha (b^*) = \alpha (a^*) - \overline{\alpha (a)} \iff \alpha (a^*) = \overline{\alpha (a)}.$$  

Let us now recall the Stone-Weierstrass theorem.

**Theorem 7.22 (Complex Stone-Weierstrass Theorem).** Let $X$ be a locally compact Hausdorff space. Suppose $A$ is a subalgebra of $C_0 (X, \mathbb{C})$ which is closed in the uniform topology, separates points, and is closed under complex conjugation. Then either $A = C_0 (X, \mathbb{C})$ (which happens if $1 \in A$) or

$$A = \mathbb{T}_x \subset \{ f \in C_0 (X, \mathbb{C}) : f (x_0) = 0 \}$$

for some $x_0 \in X$.

**Theorem 7.23 (A Dense Range Condition).** If $B$ is a commutative Banach $*$-algebra with unit which is symmetric (or equivalently real), then the image,

$$\hat{B} = \{ \hat{b} \in C \left( \hat{B} \right) : b \in B \},$$

of the Gelfand map is dense in $C \left( \hat{B} \right)$.

**Proof.** From Proposition 7.21 the Gelfand map is a $\ast$-homomorphism and therefore $\hat{B}$ is closed under conjugation. Hence, by the Stone-Weierstrass
theorem 7.22 it suffices to observe; 1) $1 = \hat{1} \in \hat{B}$ and 2) $\hat{B}$ separates points. Indeed, if $\alpha_1, \alpha_2 \in \hat{B}$ such that $\hat{a}(\alpha_1) = \hat{a}(\alpha_2)$ for all $a \in B$ then

$$\alpha_1(a) = \hat{a}(\alpha_1) = \hat{a}(\alpha_2) = \alpha_2(a) \ \forall \ a \in B,$$

i.e. $\alpha_1 = \alpha_2$.

\begin{lemma}[An Isometry Condition] \label{lem:isometry}
If $B$ is a unital commutative $*$-multiplicative Banach algebra [i.e. $\|a^*a\| = \|a^*\|\|a\|$ as in Definition \ref{def:banach-algebra}], then the Gelfand map is isometric, i.e.

$$\|a\| = \|\hat{a}\|_\infty = r(a) \ \forall \ a \in B. \quad (7.3)$$

In particular, $B$ is semi-simple, i.e. $\text{rad}(B) = \{0\}$.

\end{lemma}

\begin{proof}
If $b$ is Hermitian, then

$$\|b^2\| = \|b^*b\| = \|b^*\|\|b\| = \|b\|^2$$

and by induction, $\|b^{2^n}\| = \|b\|^{2^n}$. It then follows from Corollary \ref{cor:hermitean-algebras} that

$$r(b) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \|b^{2^n}\|^{2^{-n}} = \|b\|.$$

If $a \in B$ is now arbitrary, then $a^*a$ is Hermitian and therefore

$$r(a^*a) = \|a^*a\| = \|a^*\|\|a\|.$$

On the other hand by Proposition \ref{prop:banach-algebras}

$$\|a^*\|\|a\| = r(a^*) \leq r(a^*a) \leq \|a^*\|\|r(a)\|$$

from which it follows that $r(a) \geq \|a\|$ or $\|a^*\| = 0$. (If $\|a^*\| = 0$ then $a^* = 0$ and hence $a = a^{**} = 0$ and we will have $r(a) = \|a\|$.) Since $r(a) \leq \|a\|$ by Proposition \ref{prop:banach-algebras} we have now shown $\|a\| = r(a)$.

For the semi-simplicity of $B$ we have by Item 5 of Proposition \ref{prop:banach-algebras} that

$$\text{rad}(B) = \left\{ a \in \hat{B} : r(a) = 0 \right\}$$

while from Lemma \ref{lem:banach-algebras} we know $r(a) = \|a\|$ and thus $\text{rad}(B) = \{0\}$, i.e. $B$ is semi-simple. \hfill \qed

We are now going to apply the previous results when $B$ is a $C^*$-algebra. As we have claimed in Remark \ref{rem:banach-algebras} every $C^*$-algebra can be viewed as a $C^*$-subalgebra of $B(H)$ for some Hilbert space $H$. This comment along with Lemma \ref{lem:commutative-algebras} then implies that every $C^*$-algebra is symmetric whether it is commutative or not. As we have not proved the claim in Remark \ref{rem:banach-algebras} for completeness we will prove directly the symmetry condition for commutative $C^*$-algebras.

\begin{lemma}[Commutative $C^*$ - algebras are symmetric] \label{lem:commutative-algebras}
A commutative $C^*$-algebra, $B$, with identity is symmetric. [This is equivalent to every $\alpha \in \hat{B}$ being a $*$-homomorphism.]

\end{lemma}

\begin{proof}
By Proposition \ref{prop:banach-algebras} to show $B$ is symmetric it suffices to show $B$ is real, i.e. we must show $\sigma(a) \subset \mathbb{R}$ if $a \in B$ is Hermitian. However, this has already been done in Lemma \ref{lem:hermitean-algebras}.

We may now easily directly verify that $\sigma(a) = \sigma(a^*)$ is a $*$-homomorphism. Indeed, if $a = x + iy \in B$ with $x = x^*$ and $y = y^*$, then using $\alpha(x)$ and $\alpha(y)$ are real, we find,

$$\alpha(a) = \alpha(x - iy) = \alpha(x) - i\alpha(y) = \alpha(x) + i\alpha(y) = \alpha(a).$$

[The key to the proof is of course Lemma \ref{lem:hermitean-algebras} Here is yet another proof of this lemma.]

\begin{proof}[Second proof of Lemma \ref{lem:hermitean-algebras}]
If $a \in B$ is Hermitian, then by Example \ref{ex:hermitean-algebras} we know that $u_t := e^{it\alpha}$ is unitary for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$ and so, by Lemma \ref{lem:hermitean-algebras} $\|u_t\| = 1$ for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$. Now for $a \in \hat{B}$, $\alpha(u_t) = e^{it\alpha(a)}$ and hence, for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$,

$$e^{-t\text{Im}\alpha(a)} = |e^{it\alpha(a)}| = |\alpha(u_t)| \leq \|a\|\|u_t\| = 1$$

which forces $\text{Im} \alpha(a) = 0$. From this we conclude that

$$\sigma(a) = \left\{ \alpha(a) : \alpha \in \hat{B} \right\} \subset \mathbb{R}$$

which shows $B$ is real. \hfill \qed

\end{proof}

\begin{remark}
The Shirali-Ford Theorem asserts that a Banach algebra with involution is symmetric iff it is real. We will prove a special case of this below for commutative Banach algebras in Proposition \ref{prop:banach-algebras}. In fact almost all of the algebras we will consider here are going to be symmetric. [For example Lemma \ref{lem:banach-algebras} shows every commutative $C^*$-algebra is symmetric.] For some examples of non-symmetric Banach algebras, see Temma Nielsen Bachelor’s Thesis, “Hermitean and Symmetric Banach Algebras” where it is shown that $\ell^1(\mathbb{F}_n)$ is not a Hermitian (hence not symmetric) Banach algebra if $\mathbb{F}_n$ is the free group on $n -$ generators with $n \geq 2$. The reader can also find a proof of the Shirali-Ford Theorem stated on p. 20 of this reference, also see \cite{6}.

\end{remark}

\begin{theorem}
If $B$ is a commutative Banach $*$-algebra with unit which is symmetric and *-multiplicative [i.e. $\|a^*a\| = \|a^*\|\|a\|$ as in Definition \ref{def:banach-algebras}], then the Gelfand map, $B \ni b \mapsto \hat{b} \in C(\hat{B})$, is an isometric *-isomorphism onto $C(\hat{B})$. In particular, it follows that $B$ is a $C^*$-algebra.

\end{theorem}

\begin{proof}
By Proposition \ref{prop:banach-algebras} the Gelfand map,
\[ B \ni b \mapsto \hat{b} \in \hat{B} \subset C \left( \tilde{B}, \mathbb{C} \right), \]

is a \( * \)– algebra homomorphism. Lemma 7.24 may be applied to show that Gelfand map is an isometry which in turn implies that the image \( \left( \hat{B} \right) \) of the Gelfand map is complete and therefore closed. By Theorem 7.23 \( \hat{B} \) is dense in \( C \left( \tilde{B} \right) \) and therefore (being closed) is equal to \( C \left( \tilde{B} \right) \) and the proof is complete.

**Theorem 7.28 (Commutative \( C^* \)-algebra classification).** If \( B \) is a commutative \( C^* \)-algebra with identity, then the Gelfand map, \( B \ni b \mapsto \hat{b} \in C \left( \tilde{B} \right) \), is an isometric \( * \)– isomorphism onto \( C \left( \tilde{B} \right) \).

**Proof.** By Lemma 7.25 \( B \) is symmetric and since every \( C^* \)-algebra is a \( B^* \)-algebra (Remark 7.27), the result follows from Theorem 7.27 the result now consequently, by Proposition 7.21, the Gelfand map is a \( * \)– algebra homomorphism.

**Corollary 7.29.** A commutative \( C^* \)-algebra with identity is isometrically isomorphic to the algebra of complex valued continuous functions on a compact Hausdorff space.

**Corollary 7.30.** Suppose that \( B \) is a unital \( C^* \)-algebra (not necessarily commutative), \( a \in B \) is a normal element, i.e. \( [a, a^*] = 0 \), and \( C^* (a) \) is the commutative \( C^* \)-subalgebra of \( B \) with unit generated by \( a \). If \( x \in C^* (a) \subset B \) is invertible in \( B \), then \( x^{-1} \in C^* (a) \). In particular this shows \( \sigma_B (x) = \sigma_{C^* (a)} (x) \) for all \( x \in C^* (a) \). [See Theorem 7.28 for the special case where \( B \) is assumed to be commutative and see Theorem 7.27 for this result without assuming that \( a \) is normal!]

**Proof.** If \( x \in C^* (a) \) and \( x^{-1} \) exists in \( B \), then \( C^* (a, x^{-1}) \) is also a commutative \( C^* \)-algebra and so according to Corollary 7.29 we may view \( a \) and \( x \) as continuous functions on a compact Hausdorff space \( Y \). As \( x^{-1} \in C (Y) \) it follows that \( \text{Ran} (x) \) is a compact subset \( \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\} \) and so by the Weierstrass approximation theorem we may find \( p_n \in \mathbb{C} [z, \bar{z}] \) such that

\[
\lim_{n \to \infty} \sup_{z \in \text{Ran}(x)} \left| p_n (z, \bar{z}) - \frac{1}{z} \right| = 0.
\]

Hence it follows that \( x^{-1} \) is the uniform limit of \( p_n (x, \bar{x}) \in C^* (a) \subset C (Y) \) and therefore \( x^{-1} \in C^* (a) \).

---

3 Recall the \( C^* \)– definition requires that \( \|a^* a\| = \|a\|^2 \) for all \( a \in B \), see Definition 2.30.

4 As \( x \in C^* (a) \), we know \( xa = ax \) and therefore \( ax^{-1} = ax^{-1} \). We also know that \( x \) is normal and hence so is \( x^{-1} \).
References and Appendices
References


References


A

Miscellaneous Background Results

A.1 Multiplicative System Theorems

**Notation A.1** Let $\Omega$ be a set and $\mathbb{H}$ be a subset of the bounded real valued functions on $\Omega$. We say that $\mathbb{H}$ is closed under bounded convergence if; for every sequence, $\{f_n\}_{n=1}^\infty \subset \mathbb{H}$, satisfying:

1. there exists $M < \infty$ such that $|f_n(\omega)| \leq M$ for all $\omega \in \Omega$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$,
2. $f(\omega) := \lim_{n \to \infty} f_n(\omega)$ exists for all $\omega \in \Omega$, then $f \in \mathbb{H}$.

**Notation A.2** For any $\sigma$-algebra, $\mathcal{B} \subset 2^\Omega$, let $\mathbb{B}(\Omega,\mathcal{B};\mathbb{R})$ be the bounded $\mathcal{B}/\mathcal{B}_R$-measurable functions from $\Omega$ to $\mathbb{R}$.

**Notation A.3** If $\mathcal{M}$ is any subset of $\mathcal{B}(\Omega,2^\Omega;\mathbb{R})$, let $\mathbb{H}(\mathcal{M})$ denote the smallest subset of bounded functions on $\Omega$ which contains $\mathcal{M} \cup \{1\}$. (As usual such a space exists by taking the intersection of all such spaces.)

**Definition A.4.** A subset, $\mathcal{M} \subset \mathcal{B}(\Omega,2^\Omega;\mathbb{R})$, is called a multiplicative system if $\mathcal{M}$ is closed under finite products, i.e. $f,g \in \mathcal{M}$, then $f \cdot g \in \mathcal{M}$.

The following result may be found in Dellacherie [11, p. 14]. The style of proof given here may be found in Janson [32, Appendix A, p. 309].

**Theorem A.5 (Dynkin’s Multiplicative System Theorem).** Suppose that $\mathbb{H}$ is a vector subspace of bounded functions on $\Omega$ to $\mathbb{R}$ which contains the constant functions and is closed under bounded convergence. If $\mathcal{M} \subset \mathbb{H}$ is a multiplicative system, then $\mathbb{H}$ contains all bounded $\mathbb{M}$-measurable functions, i.e. $\mathbb{H}$ contains $\mathbb{B}(\Omega,\sigma(\mathcal{M});\mathbb{R})$.

**Proof.** We are going to in fact prove: if $\mathcal{M} \subset \mathcal{B}(\Omega,2^\Omega;\mathbb{R})$ is a multiplicative system, then $\mathbb{H}(\mathcal{M}) = \mathbb{B}(\Omega,\sigma(\mathcal{M});\mathbb{R})$. This suffices to prove the theorem as $\mathbb{H}(\mathcal{M}) \subset \mathbb{H}$ is contained in $\mathbb{H}$ by very definition of $\mathbb{H}(\mathcal{M})$. To simplify notation let us now assume that $\mathbb{H} = \mathbb{H}(\mathcal{M})$. The remainder of the proof will be broken into five steps.

**Step 1.** ($\mathbb{H}$ is an algebra of functions.) For $f \in \mathbb{H}$, let $\mathbb{H}^f := \{g \in \mathbb{H} : gf \in \mathbb{H}\}$. The reader will now easily verify that $\mathbb{H}^f$ is a linear subspace of $\mathbb{H}$, $1 \in \mathbb{H}^f$, and $\mathbb{H}^f$ is closed under bounded convergence. Moreover if $f \in \mathcal{M}$, since $\mathcal{M}$ is a multiplicative system, $\mathcal{M} \subset \mathbb{H}^f$. Hence by the definition of $\mathbb{H}$, $\mathbb{H} = \mathbb{H}^f$, i.e. $fg \in \mathbb{H}$ for all $f \in \mathcal{M}$ and $g \in \mathbb{H}$. Having proved this it now follows for any $f \in \mathbb{H}$ that $\mathcal{M} \subset \mathbb{H}^f$ and therefore as before, $\mathbb{H}^f = \mathbb{H}$. Thus we may conclude that $fg \in \mathbb{H}$ whenever $f,g \in \mathbb{H}$, i.e. $\mathbb{H}$ is an algebra of functions.

**Step 2.** ($\mathcal{B} := \{A \subset \Omega : 1_A \in \mathbb{H}\}$ is a $\sigma$-algebra.) Using the fact that $\mathbb{H}$ is an algebra containing constants, the reader will easily verify that $\mathcal{B}$ is closed under complementation, finite intersections, and contains $\Omega$, i.e. $\mathcal{B}$ is an algebra. Using the fact that $\mathbb{H}$ is closed under bounded convergence, it follows that $\mathcal{B}$ is closed under increasing unions and hence that $\mathcal{B}$ is a $\sigma$-algebra.

**Step 3.** ($\mathcal{B}(\Omega,\mathcal{B};\mathbb{R}) \subset \mathbb{H}$) Since $\mathbb{H}$ is a vector space and $\mathbb{H}$ contains $1_A$ for all $A \in \mathcal{B}$, $\mathbb{H}$ contains all $\mathcal{B}$-measurable simple functions. Since every bounded $\mathcal{B}$-measurable function may be written as a bounded limit of such simple functions, it follows that $\mathbb{H}$ contains all bounded $\mathcal{B}$-measurable functions.

**Step 4.** ($\sigma(\mathcal{M}) \subset \mathcal{B}$.) Let $\varphi_n(x) = 0 \lor [(nx) \land 1]$ (see Figure A.1 below) so that $\varphi_n(x) \uparrow 1_{x>0}$. Given $f \in \mathcal{M}$ and $a \in \mathbb{R}$, let $F_n := \varphi_n(f-a)$ and $M := \sup_{\omega \in \Omega} |f(\omega) - a|$. By the Weierstrass approximation theorem, we may find polynomial functions, $p_l(x)$ such that $p_l \to \varphi_n$ uniformly on $[-M,M]$. Since $p_l$ is a polynomial and $\mathbb{H}$ is an algebra, $p_l(f-a) \in \mathbb{H}$ for all $l$. Moreover, $p_l \circ (f-a) \to F_n$ uniformly as $l \to \infty$, from with it follows that $F_n \in \mathbb{H}$ for all $n$. Since, $F_n \uparrow 1_{f-a}$ it follows that $1_{f-a} \in \mathbb{H}$, i.e. $\{f > a\} \in \mathcal{B}$. As the sets $\{f > a\}$ with $a \in \mathbb{R}$ and $f \in \mathcal{M}$ generate $\sigma(\mathcal{M})$, it follows that $\sigma(\mathcal{M}) \subset \mathcal{B}$.

**Fig. A.1.** Plots of $\varphi_1$, $\varphi_2$ and $\varphi_3$ which are continuous functions used to approximate, $x \to 1_{x>0}$.
Theorem A.5. \( B := b \) Find two distinct probability measures, \( \mu, \nu \) on \( \Omega, \sigma(\Omega) \subset B \), and so \( B(\Omega, \sigma(\Omega) ; \mathbb{R}) \subset B(\Omega, B; \mathbb{R}) \) which combined with step 3. shows, \[
B(\Omega, \sigma(\Omega) ; \mathbb{R}) \subset B(\Omega, B; \mathbb{R}) \subset H(\Omega).
\]
However, we know that \( B(\Omega, \sigma(\Omega) ; \mathbb{R}) \) is a subspace of bounded measurable functions containing \( M \) and therefore \( H(\Omega) \subset B(\Omega, \sigma(\Omega) ; \mathbb{R}) \) which suffices to complete the proof.

Corollary A.6. Suppose \( H \) is a subspace of bounded real valued functions such that \( 1 \in H \) and \( H \) is closed under bounded convergence. If \( \mathcal{P} \subset 2^\mathbb{O} \) is a multiplicative class such that \( 1_A \in H \) for all \( A \in \mathcal{P} \), then \( H \) contains all bounded \( \sigma(\mathcal{P}) \)-measurable functions.

Proof. Let \( \mathbb{M} := \{1\} \cup \{1_A : A \in \mathcal{P}\} \). Then \( \mathbb{M} \subset H \) is a multiplicative system and the proof is completed with an application of Theorem A.5.

Example A.7. Suppose \( \mu, \nu \) are two probability measure on \( (\Omega, B) \) such that
\[
\int \Omega f d\mu = \int \Omega f d\nu \tag{A.1}
\]
for all \( f \in \) a multiplicative subset, \( M \), of bounded measurable functions on \( \Omega \). Then \( \mu = \nu \) on \( \sigma(\mathbb{M}) \). Indeed, apply Theorem A.5 with \( H \) being the bounded measurable functions on \( \Omega \) such that Eq. (A.1) holds. In particular if \( \mathbb{M} := \{1\} \cup \{1_A : A \in \mathcal{P}\} \) with \( \mathcal{P} \) being a multiplicative class we learn that \( \mu = \nu \) on \( \sigma(\mathbb{M}) = \sigma(\mathcal{P}) \).

Exercise A.1. Let \( \Omega := \{1, 2, 3, 4\} \) and \( \mathbb{M} := \{1_A, 1_B\} \) where \( A := \{1, 2\} \) and \( B := \{2, 3\} \).

a) Show \( \sigma(\mathbb{M}) = 2^\mathbb{O} \).
b) Find two distinct probability measures, \( \mu, \nu \) on \( 2^\mathbb{O} \) such that \( \mu(\Omega) = \nu(\Omega) \) and \( \mu(B) = \nu(B) \), i.e. Eq. (A.1) holds for all \( f \in \mathbb{M} \).

Moral: the assumption that \( M \) is multiplicative can not be dropped from Theorem A.5.

Proposition A.8. Suppose \( \mu, \nu \) are two measures on \( (\Omega, B) \), \( \mathcal{P} \subset B \) is a multiplicative system (i.e. closed under intersections as in Definition ??) such that \( \mu(\Omega) = \nu(\Omega) \) for all \( A \in \mathcal{P} \). If there exists \( \Omega_n \in \mathcal{P} \) such that \( \Omega_n \uparrow \Omega \) and \( \mu(\Omega_n) = \nu(\Omega_n) < \infty \), then \( \mu = \nu \) on \( \sigma(\mathcal{P}) \).

Proof. Step 1. First assume that \( \mu(\Omega) = \nu(\Omega) < \infty \) and then apply Example A.7 with \( \mathbb{M} = \{1_A : A \in \mathcal{P}\} \) in order to find \( \mu = \nu \) on \( \sigma(\mathbb{M}) = \sigma(\mathcal{P}) \).

Step 2. For the general case let \( \mu_n(B) := \mu(B \cap \Omega_n) \) and \( \nu_n(B) := \nu(B \cap \Omega_n) \) for all \( B \in \mathcal{B} \). Then \( \mu_n = \nu_n \) on \( \mathcal{P} \) (because \( \Omega_n \in \mathcal{P} \)) and
\[
\mu_n(\Omega) = \nu_n(\Omega) = \nu_n(\Omega_n) = \nu_n(\Omega).
\]
Therefore by step 1, \( \mu_n = \nu_n \) on \( \sigma(\mathcal{P}) \). Passing to the limit as \( n \to \infty \) then shows
\[
\mu(B) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \mu(B \cap \Omega_n) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \mu_n(B)
\]
\[
= \lim_{n \to \infty} \nu_n(B) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \nu(B \cap \Omega_n) = \nu(B)
\]
for all \( B \in \sigma(\mathcal{P}) \).

Here is a complex version of Theorem A.5.

Theorem A.9 (Complex Multiplicative System Theorem). Suppose \( H \) is a complex linear subspace of the bounded complex functions on \( \Omega \), \( 1 \in H \), \( H \) is closed under complex conjugation, and \( H \) is closed under bounded convergence. If \( \mathbb{M} \subset H \) is multiplicative system which is closed under conjugation, then \( H \) contains all bounded complex valued \( \sigma(\mathbb{M}) \)-measurable functions.

Proof. Let \( \mathbb{M}_0 = \text{span}_\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{M} \cup \{1\}) \) be the complex span of \( \mathbb{M} \). As the reader should verify, \( \mathbb{M}_0 \) is an algebra, \( \mathbb{M}_0 \subset H \), \( \mathbb{M}_0 \) is closed under complex conjugation and \( \sigma(\mathbb{M}_0) = \sigma(\mathbb{M}) \). Let
\[
H^R := \{f \in H : f \text{ is real valued} \}
\]
\[
\mathbb{M}_0^R := \{f \in \mathbb{M}_0^R : f \text{ is real valued} \}
\]
Then \( H^R \) is a real linear space of bounded real valued functions 1 which is closed under bounded convergence and \( \mathbb{M}_0^R \subset H^R \). Moreover, \( \mathbb{M}_0^R \) is a multiplicative system (as the reader should check) and therefore by Theorem A.5 \( H^R \) contains all bounded \( \sigma(\mathbb{M}_0^R) \)-measurable real valued functions. Since \( H \) and \( \mathbb{M}_0 \) are complex linear spaces closed under complex conjugation, for any \( f \in H \) or \( f \in \mathbb{M}_0 \), the functions \( \text{Re} f = \frac{1}{2}(f + \overline{f}) \) and \( \text{Im} f = \frac{1}{2i}(f - \overline{f}) \) are in \( H \) or \( \mathbb{M}_0 \) respectively. Therefore \( \mathbb{M}_0^R = \mathbb{M}_0^R + i\mathbb{M}_0^R \), \( \sigma(\mathbb{M}_0^R) = \sigma(\mathbb{M}_0) = \sigma(\mathbb{M}) \), and \( H = H^R + iH^R \). Hence if \( f : \Omega \to \mathbb{C} \) is a bounded \( \sigma(\mathbb{M}) \)-measurable function, then \( f = \text{Re} f + i\text{Im} f \in H \) since \( \text{Re} f \) and \( \text{Im} f \) are in \( H^R \).

Lemma A.10. If \( -\infty < a < b < \infty \), there exists \( f_n \in C_c([\mathbb{R}, [0, 1]) \) such that
\[
\lim_{n \to \infty} f_n = 1_{(a,b)}.
\]

Proof. The reader should verify \( \lim_{n \to \infty} f_n = 1_{(a,b)} \) where \( f_n \in C_c([\mathbb{R}, [0, 1]) \) is defined (for \( n \) sufficiently large) by
Lemma A.11. For each $\lambda > 0$, let $e_\lambda (x) := e^{i\lambda x}$. Then

$$B_\mathbb{R} = \sigma (e_\lambda : \lambda > 0) = \sigma (e_\lambda^{-1} (W) : \lambda > 0, W \in B_\mathbb{R}).$$

Proof. Let $S^1 := \{ z \in \mathbb{C} : |z| = 1 \}$. For $-\pi < \alpha < \beta < \pi$ let

$$A (\alpha, \beta) := \{ e^{i\theta} : \alpha < \theta < \beta \} = S^1 \cap \{ re^{i\theta} : \alpha < \theta < \beta, r > 0 \}$$

which is a measurable subset of $\mathbb{C}$ (why). Moreover we have $e_\lambda (x) \in A (\alpha, \beta)$ if $\alpha x \in \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} [(\alpha, \beta) + 2\pi n]$ and hence

$$e_\lambda^{-1} (A (\alpha, \beta)) = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \left[ \frac{\alpha}{\lambda} + \frac{\beta}{\lambda} + 2\pi \frac{n}{\lambda} \right] \in \sigma (e_\lambda : \lambda > 0).$$

Hence if $-\infty < a < b < \infty$ and $\lambda > 0$ sufficiently small so that $-\pi < \lambda a < \lambda b < \pi$, we have

$$e_\lambda^{-1} (A (\lambda a, \lambda b)) = \sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \left[ (a, b) + 2\pi \frac{n}{\lambda} \right]$$

and hence

$$(a, b) = \cap_{\lambda > 0} e_\lambda^{-1} (A (\lambda a, \lambda b)) \in \sigma (e_\lambda : \lambda > 0).$$

This shows $B_\mathbb{R} \subset \sigma (e_\lambda : \lambda > 0)$. As $e_\lambda$ is continuous and hence Borel measurable for all $\lambda > 0$ we automatically know that $\sigma (e_\lambda : \lambda > 0) \subset B_\mathbb{R}$. ■

Remark A.12. A slight modification of the above proof actually shows if $\{ \lambda_n \} \subset (0, \infty)$ with $\lim_{n \to \infty} \lambda_n = 0$, then $\sigma (e_\lambda : \lambda \in \mathbb{N}) = B_\mathbb{R}$.

Corollary A.13. Each of the following $\sigma$-algebras on $\mathbb{R}^d$ are equal to $B_{\mathbb{R}^d}$:

1. $M_1 := \sigma (\cup_{n=1}^\infty \{ x \to f (x) : f \in C_c (\mathbb{R}) \})$,
2. $M_2 := \sigma (x \to f_1 (x_1) \cdots f_d (x_d) : f_i \in C_c (\mathbb{R}))$
3. $M_3 = \sigma (C_c (\mathbb{R}^d))$, and
4. $M_4 := \sigma (\{ x \to e^{i\lambda x} : \lambda \in \mathbb{R}^d \}).$

Proof. As the functions defining each $M_i$ are continuous and hence Borel measurable, it follows that $M_i \subset B_{\mathbb{R}^d}$ for each $i$. So to finish the proof it suffices to show $B_{\mathbb{R}^d} \subset M_i$ for each $i$.

$M_1$ case. Let $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ with $-\infty < a < b < \infty$. By Lemma A.10 there exists $f_n \in C_c (\mathbb{R})$ such that $\lim_{n \to \infty} f_n = 1_{(a,b]}$. Therefore it follows that $x \to 1_{(a,b]} (x_i)$ is $M_1$-measurable for each $i$. Moreover if $-\infty < a_i < b_i < \infty$ for each $i$, then we may conclude that

$$x \to \prod_{i=1}^d 1_{(a_i,b_i]} (x_i) = 1_{(a_1,b_1] \times \cdots \times (a_d,b_d]} (x)$$

is $M_1$-measurable as well and hence $(a_1,b_1] \times \cdots \times (a_d,b_d] \in M_1$. As such sets generate $B_{\mathbb{R}^d}$ we may conclude that $B_{\mathbb{R}^d} \subset M_1$.

and therefore $M_1 = B_{\mathbb{R}^d}$.

$M_2$ case. As above, we may find $f_{i,n} \to 1_{(a_i,b_i]}$ as $n \to \infty$ for each $1 \leq i \leq d$ and therefore,

$$1_{(a_1,b_1] \times \cdots \times (a_d,b_d]} (x) = \lim_{n \to \infty} f_{i,n} (x_1) \cdots f_{d,n} (x_d) \text{ for all } x \in \mathbb{R}^d.$$ This shows that $1_{(a_1,b_1] \times \cdots \times (a_d,b_d]}$ is $M_2$-measurable and therefore $(a_1,b_1] \times \cdots \times (a_d,b_d] \in M_2$.

$M_3$ case. This is easy since $B_{\mathbb{R}^d} = M_2 \subset M_3 \subset B_{\mathbb{R}^d}$.

$M_4$ case. Let $\pi_j : \mathbb{R}^d \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be projection onto the $j$th factor – then for $\lambda > 0$, $e_\lambda \circ \pi_j (x) = e^{i\lambda x_j}$. It then follows that

$$\sigma (e_\lambda \circ \pi_j : \lambda > 0) = \sigma \left( (e_\lambda \circ \pi_j)^{-1} (W) : \lambda > 0, W \in B_{\mathbb{C}} \right)$$

and $\sigma \left( \pi_j^{-1} \left( e_\lambda^{-1} (W) \right) : \lambda > 0, W \in B_{\mathbb{C}} \right) = \pi_j^{-1} (B_{\mathbb{R}}) \subset M_4$. Therefore it follows that

$$\sigma (e_\lambda \circ \pi_j : \lambda > 0) \subset M_4.$$ This shows that $\sigma (e_\lambda \circ \pi_j : \lambda > 0) \subset M_4$ for each $j$ we must have

$$B_{\mathbb{R}^d} = \bigoplus_{j=1}^d B_{\mathbb{R}} \subset M_4.$$ ■
In case 3, Corollary A.13 contains the constant function, 1.

Suppose that

\[ n, \] for each \( n \), it follows that \( x \to 1_{[a,b]}(x_i) \) is \( M_4 \)-measurable for all \(-\infty < a < b < \infty\). Therefore, just as in the proof of case 1., we may now conclude that \( B_{\mathbb{R}^d} \subset M_4 \).

Corollary A.14. Suppose that \( \mathbb{H} \) is a subspace of complex valued functions on \( \mathbb{R}^d \) which is closed under complex conjugation and bounded convergence. If \( \mathbb{H} \) contains any one of the following collection of functions;

1. \( \mathbb{M} := \{ x \to f_1(x_1) \ldots f_d(x_d) : f_i \in C_c(\mathbb{R}) \} \)
2. \( \mathbb{M} := C_c(\mathbb{R}^d) \), or
3. \( \mathbb{M} := \{ x \to e^{i\lambda x} : \lambda \in \mathbb{R}^d \} \)

then \( \mathbb{H} \) contains all bounded complex Borel measurable functions on \( \mathbb{R}^d \).

Proof. Observe that if \( f \in C_c(\mathbb{R}) \) such that \( f(x) = 1 \) in a neighborhood of 0, then \( f_n(x) := f(x/n) \to 1 \) as \( n \to \infty \). Therefore in cases 1. and 2., \( \mathbb{H} \) contains the constant function, 1, since

\[ 1 = \lim_{n \to \infty} f_n(x_1) \ldots f_n(x_d) . \]

In case 3, \( 1 \in \mathbb{M} \subset \mathbb{H} \) as well. The result now follows from Theorem A.9 and Corollary A.13.

Proposition A.15 (Change of Variables Formula). Suppose that \(-\infty < a < b < \infty\) and \( u : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R} \) is a continuously differentiable function which is \textit{not necessarily} invertible. Let \( [c, d] = u([a, b]) \) where \( c = \min u([a, b]) \) and \( d = \max u([a, b]) \). (By the intermediate value theorem \( u([a, b]) \) is an interval.) Then for all bounded measurable functions, \( f : [c, d] \to \mathbb{R} \) we have

\[ \int_{u(a)}^{u(b)} f(x) \, dx = \int_{a}^{b} f(u(t)) \dot{u}(t) \, dt. \]

Moreover, Eq. (A.2) is also valid if \( f : [c, d] \to \mathbb{R} \) is measurable and

\[ \int_{a}^{b} |f(u(t))| \, |\dot{u}(t)| \, dt < \infty. \]

Proof. Let \( \mathbb{H} \) denote the space of bounded measurable functions such that Eq. (A.2) holds. It is easily checked that \( \mathbb{H} \) is a linear space closed under bounded convergence. Next we show that \( \mathbb{M} = C([c, d], \mathbb{R}) \subset \mathbb{H} \) which coupled with Corollary A.14 will show that \( \mathbb{H} \) contains all bounded measurable functions from \( [c, d] \) to \( \mathbb{R} \).

If \( f : [c, d] \to \mathbb{R} \) is a continuous function and let \( F \) be an anti-derivative of \( f \). Then by the fundamental theorem of calculus,

\[ \int_{a}^{b} f(u(t)) \dot{u}(t) \, dt = \int_{a}^{b} F'(u(t)) \dot{u}(t) \, dt = \int_{a}^{b} \frac{d}{dt} F(u(t)) \, dt = F(u(b)) - F(u(a)) = \int_{u(a)}^{u(b)} F'(x) \, dx = \int_{u(a)}^{u(b)} f(x) \, dx. \]

Thus \( \mathbb{M} \subset \mathbb{H} \) and the first assertion of the proposition is proved.

Now suppose that \( f : [c, d] \to \mathbb{R} \) is measurable and Eq. (A.3) holds. For \( M < \infty \), let \( f_M(x) = f(x) \cdot 1_{f(x) \leq M} \) - a bounded measurable function. Therefore applying Eq. (A.2) with \( f \) replaced by \( |f_M| \) shows,

\[ \left| \int_{u(a)}^{u(b)} f_M(x) \, dx \right| = \left| \int_{a}^{b} |f_M(u(t))| \dot{u}(t) \, dt \right| \leq \int_{a}^{b} |f_M(u(t))| |\dot{u}(t)| \, dt. \]

Using the MCT, we may let \( M \to \infty \) in the previous inequality to learn

\[ \left| \int_{u(a)}^{u(b)} f(x) \, dx \right| \leq \int_{a}^{b} |f(u(t))| |\dot{u}(t)| \, dt < \infty. \]

Now apply Eq. (A.2) with \( f \) replaced by \( f_M \) to learn

\[ \int_{u(a)}^{u(b)} f_M(x) \, dx = \int_{a}^{b} f_M(u(t)) \dot{u}(t) \, dt. \]

Using the DCT we may now let \( M \to \infty \) in this equation to show that Eq. (A.2) remains valid.

Exercise A.2. Suppose that \( u : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R} \) is a continuously differentiable function such that \( \dot{u}(t) \geq 0 \) for all \( t \) and \( \lim_{t \to \pm \infty} u(t) = \pm \infty \). Use the multiplicative system theorem to prove

\[ \int_{\mathbb{R}} f(x) \, dx = \int_{\mathbb{R}} f(u(t)) \dot{u}(t) \, dt \]

for all measurable functions \( f : \mathbb{R} \to [0, \infty] \). In particular applying this result to \( u(t) = at + b \) where \( a > 0 \) implies,

\[ \int_{\mathbb{R}} f(x) \, dx = a \int_{\mathbb{R}} f(at + b) \, dt. \]

Definition A.16. The \textit{Fourier transform} or \textit{characteristic function} of a finite measure, \( \mu \), on \( (\mathbb{R}^d, \mathcal{B}_{\mathbb{R}^d}) \), is the function, \( \hat{\mu} : \mathbb{R}^d \to \mathbb{C} \) defined by

\[ \hat{\mu}(\lambda) := \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} e^{i\lambda x} \, d\mu(x) \text{ for all } \lambda \in \mathbb{R}^d. \]
Corollary A.17. Suppose that $\mu$ and $\nu$ are two probability measures on $(\mathbb{R}^d, \mathcal{B}_{\mathbb{R}^d})$. Then any one of the next three conditions implies that $\mu = \nu$:

1. $\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} f_1(x_1) \ldots f_d(x_d) \, d\nu(x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} f_1(x_1) \ldots f_d(x_d) \, d\mu(x)$ for all $f_i \in C_c^\infty(\mathbb{R})$.
2. $\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} f(x) \, d\nu(x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} f(x) \, d\mu(x)$ for all $f \in C_c^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d)$.
3. $\hat{\nu} = \hat{\mu}$.

Item 3. asserts that the Fourier transform is injective.

Proof. Let $\mathcal{H}$ be the collection of bounded complex measurable functions from $\mathbb{R}^d$ to $\mathbb{C}$ such that

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^d} f \, d\mu = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} f \, d\nu.$$ (A.5)

It is easily seen that $\mathcal{H}$ is a linear space closed under complex conjugation and bounded convergence (by the DCT). Since $\mathcal{H}$ contains one of the multiplicative systems appearing in Corollary A.14, it contains all bounded Borel measurable functions form $\mathbb{R}^d \to \mathbb{C}$. Thus we may take $f = 1_A$ with $A \in \mathcal{B}_{\mathbb{R}^d}$ in Eq. (A.5) to learn, $\mu(A) = \nu(A)$ for all $A \in \mathcal{B}_{\mathbb{R}^d}$.

A.2 Weak, Weak*, and Strong topologies

Another collection of examples of topological vector spaces comes from putting different (weaker) topologies on familiar Banach spaces.

Definition A.18 (Weak and weak-* topologies). Let $X$ be a normed vector space and $X^*$ its dual space (all continuous linear functionals on $X$).

1. The **weak topology** on $X$ is the $X^*$ topology of $X$, i.e. the smallest topology on $X$ such that every element $f \in X^*$ is continuous. This topology is often denoted by $\sigma(X, X^*)$.
2. The **weak-* topology** on $X^*$ is the topology generated by $X$, i.e. the smallest topology on $X^*$ such that the maps $f \in X^* \to f(x) \in \mathbb{C}$ are continuous for all $x \in X$. In other words it is the topology $\sigma(X^*, X)$ where $X$ is the image of $X \ni x \to \hat{x} \in X^{**}$. [The weak topology on $X^*$ is the topology generated by $X^{**}$ which is may be finer than the weak-* topology on $X^*$.]

Definition A.19 (Operator Topologies). Let $X$ and $Y$ be a normed vector spaces and $B(X,Y)$ the normed space of bounded linear transformations from $X$ to $Y$.

1. The **strong operator topology (s.o.t.)** on $B(X,Y)$ is the smallest topology such that $T \in B(X,Y) \to T x \in Y$ is continuous for all $x \in X$.
2. The **weak operator topology (w.o.t.)** on $B(X,Y)$ is the smallest topology such that $T \in B(X,Y) \to f(T x) \in \mathbb{C}$ is continuous for all $x \in X$ and $f \in Y^*$.

Remark A.20. Let us be a little more precise about the topologies described in the above definitions.

1. The **weak topology** on $X$ has a neighborhood base at $x_0 \in X$ consisting of sets of the form

$$N = \cap_{i=1}^n \{ x \in X : |f_i(x) - f_i(x_0)| < \varepsilon \}$$

where $f_i \in X^*$ and $\varepsilon > 0$.

2. The **weak-* topology** on $X^*$ has a neighborhood base at $f \in X^*$ consisting of sets of the form

$$N := \cap_{i=1}^n \{ g \in X^* : |f_i - g_i| < \varepsilon \}$$

where $x_i \in X$ and $\varepsilon > 0$.

3. The **strong operator topology** on $B(X,Y)$ has a neighborhood base at $T \in X^*$ consisting of sets of the form

$$N := \cap_{i=1}^n \{ S \in L(X,Y) : \| S x_i - T x_i \| < \varepsilon \}$$

where $x_i \in X$ and $\varepsilon > 0$.

4. The **weak operator topology** on $B(X,Y)$ has a neighborhood base at $T \in X^*$ consisting of sets of the form

$$N := \cap_{i=1}^n \{ S \in L(X,Y) : |f_i(S x_i - T x_i)| < \varepsilon \}$$

where $x_i \in X$, $f_i \in X^*$ and $\varepsilon > 0$.

5. If we let $\tau_{op}$ be the operator-norm topology, $\tau_s$ be strong operator topology, and $\tau_w$ be the weak operator topology on $B(X,Y)$, then $\tau_w \subset \tau_s \subset \tau_{op}$. Consequently, if $F \subset B(X,Y)$ is a set, then $\overline{F}^{\tau_{op}} \subset \overline{F}^{\tau_s} \subset \overline{F}^{\tau_w}$ and in particular; a $\tau_w$-closed set is a $\tau_s$ – closed set and a $\tau_s$ – closed set is a $\tau_{op}$ – closed set.

Lemma A.21. Let us continue the same notation as in item 5. of Remark A.20. Then $F \subset \overline{F}^{\tau_{op}}$ iff for every $A \subset F$, $X \times Y^*$, there exists $A_n \in F$ such that $\lim_{n \to \infty} f(A_n x) = f(A x)$ for all $(f, x) \in A$ and similarly $A \in \overline{A}^{\tau_s}$ iff for every $A \subset F$, there exists $A_n \in F$ such that $\lim_{n \to \infty} A_n x = A x$ for all $x \in A$. [Note well, the sequences $\{A_n\} \subset \Gamma$ used here are allowed to depend on $\Gamma$!]

Proof. This follows directly from Proposition ?? and the definitions of the weak and strong operator topologies.
A.3 Quotient spaces, adjoints, and reflexivity

**Definition A.22.** Let $X$ and $Y$ be Banach spaces and $A : X \rightarrow Y$ be a linear operator. The **transpose** of $A$ is the linear operator $A^\dagger : Y^\ast \rightarrow X^\ast$ defined by $(A^\dagger f) (x) = f(Ax)$ for $f \in Y^\ast$ and $x \in X$. The **null space** of $A$ is the subspace $\text{Nul}(A) := \{ x \in X : Ax = 0 \} \subset X$. For $M \subset X$ and $N \subset X^\ast$ let

$$M^0 := \{ f \in X^\ast : f|_M = 0 \}$$

and

$$N^\perp := \{ x \in X : f(x) = 0 \text{ for all } f \in N \}.$$

**Proposition A.23 (Basic properties of transposes and annihilators).**

1. $\|A\| = \|A^\dagger\|$ and $A^\dagger x = Ax$ for all $x \in X$.
2. $M^0$ and $N^\perp$ are always closed subspaces of $X^\ast$ and $X$ respectively.
3. $(M^0)^\perp = \overline{M}$.
4. $\overline{N} \subset (N^\perp)^0$ with equality when $X$ is reflexive. (See Exercise ??, Example ?? above which shows that $\overline{N} \neq (N^\perp)^0$ in general.)
5. $\text{Nul}(A) = \text{Ran}(A^\dagger)^\perp$ and $\text{Nul}(A^\dagger) = \text{Ran}(A)^0$. Moreover, $\text{Ran}(A) = \text{Nul}(A^\dagger)^\perp$ and if $X$ is reflexive, then $\text{Ran}(A^\dagger) = \text{Nul}(A)^0$.
6. $X$ is reflexive iff $X^\ast$ is reflexive. More generally $X^{**} = \hat{X}^\ast \oplus \hat{X}^0$ where

$$\hat{X}^0 = \{ \lambda \in X^{**} : \lambda(\hat{x}) = 0 \text{ for all } x \in X \}.$$

**Proof.**

1. $\|A\| = \sup \|Ax\| = \sup \sup \|f(Ax)\|_{\|x\|=1}$

$$= \sup \sup \|A^\dagger f(x)\| = \sup \|A^\dagger f\| = \|A^\dagger\|.$$

2. This is an easy consequence of the assumed continuity off all linear functionals involved.

3. If $x \in M$, then $f(x) = 0$ for all $f \in M^0$ so that $x \in (M^0)^\perp$. Therefore $M \subset (M^0)^\perp$. If $x \notin \overline{M}$, then there exists $f \in X^\ast$ such that $f|_M = 0$ while $f(x) \neq 0$, i.e., $f \in M^0$ yet $f(x) \neq 0$. This shows $x \notin (M^0)^\perp$ and we have shown $(M^0)^\perp \subset \overline{M}$.

4. It is again simple to show $N \subset (N^\perp)^0$ and therefore $\overline{N} \subset (N^\perp)^0$. Moreover, as above if $f \notin \overline{N}$ there exists $\psi \in X^{**}$ such that $\psi|_N = 0$ while $\psi(f) \neq 0$.

If $X$ is reflexive, $\hat{x}$ for some $x \in X$ and since $g(x) = \psi(g) = 0$ for all $g \in \overline{N}$, we have $x \in N^\perp$. On the other hand, $f(x) = \psi(f) \neq 0$ so $f \notin (N^\perp)^0$. Thus again $(N^\perp)^0 \subset \overline{N}$.

5. $\text{Nul}(A) = \{ x \in X : Ax = 0 \} = \{ x \in X : f(Ax) = 0 \forall f \in X^\ast \}$

$$= \{ x \in X : A^\dagger f(x) = 0 \forall f \in X^\ast \}$$

$$= \{ x \in X : g(x) = 0 \forall g \in \text{Ran}(A^\dagger) \} = \text{Ran}(A^\dagger)^\perp.$$

Similarly,

$$\text{Nul}(A^\dagger) = \{ f \in Y^\ast : A^\dagger f = 0 \} = \{ f \in Y^\ast : (A^\dagger f)(x) = 0 \forall x \in X \}$$

$$= \{ f \in Y^\ast : f(\text{Ran}(A)) = 0 \} = \text{Ran}(A)^0.$$

6. Let $\psi \in X^{**}$ and define $f_\psi \in X^\ast$ by $f_\psi(x) = \psi(\hat{x})$ for all $x \in X$ and set $\psi' := \psi - f_\psi$. For $x \in X$ (so $\hat{x} \in X^{**}$) we have

$$\psi'(\hat{x}) = \psi(\hat{x}) - f_\psi(\hat{x}) = f_\psi(x) - \hat{x}(f_\psi(x)) = f_\psi(x) - f_\psi(x) = 0.$$

This shows $\psi' \in \hat{X}^0$ and we have shown $X^{**} = \hat{X}^\ast \oplus \hat{X}^0$. If $\psi \in \hat{X}^\ast \cap \hat{X}^0$, then $\psi = \hat{f}$ for some $f \in X^\ast$ and $0 = \hat{f}(\hat{x}) = \hat{x}(f) = f(x)$ for all $x \in X$, i.e. $f = 0$ so $\psi = 0$. Therefore $X^{**} = \hat{X}^\ast \oplus \hat{X}^0$ as claimed. If $X$ is reflexive, then $X = X^{**}$ and so $\hat{X}^0 = \{ 0 \}$ showing $X^{**} = \hat{X}^\ast$, i.e. $X^\ast$ is reflexive. Conversely if $X^\ast$ is reflexive we conclude that $\hat{X}^0 = \{ 0 \}$ and therefore $X^{**} = \{ 0 \}^\perp = (\hat{X}^0)^\perp = \hat{X}$, so that $X$ is reflexive.

**Alternative proof.** Notice that $f_\psi = J^\dagger \psi$, where $J : X \rightarrow X^{**}$ is given by $Jx = \hat{x}$, and the composition

$$f \in X^\ast \rightarrow \hat{f} \in X^{**} \rightarrow J^\dagger \hat{f} \in X^*$$

is the identity map since $(J^\dagger \hat{f})(x) = \hat{f}(Jx) = \hat{x}(f) = f(x)$ for all $x \in X$. Thus it follows that $X^\ast \rightarrow X^{**}$ is invertible iff $J^\dagger$ is its inverse which can happen iff $\text{Nul}(J^\dagger) = \{ 0 \}$. But as above $\text{Nul}(J^\dagger) = \text{Ran}(J)^0$ which will be zero iff $\text{Ran}(J) = X^{**}$ and since $J$ is an isometry this is equivalent to saying $\text{Ran}(J) = X^{**}$. So we have again shown $X^\ast$ is reflexive iff $X$ is reflexive.

**Theorem A.24 (Banach Space Factor Theorem).** Let $X$ be a Banach space, $M \subset X$ be a proper closed subspace, $X/M$ the quotient space, $\pi : X \rightarrow X/M$ the projection map $\pi(x) = x + M$ for $x \in X$ and define the quotient norm on $X/M$ by
Clearly $\|\pi(x)\|_{X/M} = \|x + M\|_{X/M} = \inf_{m \in M} \|x + m\|_X$.

Then:

1. $\|\cdot\|_{X/M}$ is a norm on $X/M$.
2. The projection map $\pi : X \to X/M$ is has norm 1, $\|\pi\| = 1$.
3. For all $a \in X$ and $\varepsilon > 0$, $\pi \left( B^X(a, \varepsilon) \right) = B^{X/M}(\pi(a), \varepsilon)$ and in particular $\pi$ is an open mapping.
4. $(X/M, \|\cdot\|_{X/M})$ is a Banach space.
5. If $Y$ is another normed space and $T : X \to Y$ is a bounded linear transformation such that $M \subset \text{Null}(T)$, then there exists a unique linear transformation $\hat{T} : X/M \to Y$ such that $T = \hat{T} \circ \pi$ and moreover $\|T\| = \|\hat{T}\|$.
6. The map,

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll}
\text{closed subspaces} \\
of X \text{ containing } M
\end{array} \right\} \ni N \to \pi(N) \in \left\{ \begin{array}{ll}
\text{closed subspaces} \\
of X/M
\end{array} \right\}$$

is a bijection. The inverse map is given by pulling back subspace of $\pi(X/M)$ by $\pi^{-1}$. [The word closed may be removed above and the result still holds as one learns in a linear algebra class.]

Proof. We take each item in turn.

1. Clearly $\|x + M\| \geq 0$ and if $\|x + M\| = 0$, then there exists $m_n \in M$ such that $\|x + m_n\| \to 0$ as $n \to \infty$, i.e. $x = - \lim_{n \to \infty} m_n \in M = M$. Since $x \in M$, $x + M = 0 \in X/M$. If $c \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\}$, $x \in X$, then

$$\|cx + M\| = \inf_{m \in M} \|cx + m\| = |c| \inf_{m \in M} \|x + m/c\| = |c| \|x + M\|$$

because $m/c$ runs through $M$ as $m$ runs through $M$. Let $x_1, x_2 \in X$ and $m_1, m_2 \in M$ then

$$\|x_1 + x_2 + M\| \leq \|x_1 + x_2 + m_1 + m_2\| \leq \|x_1 + m_1\| + \|x_2 + m_2\|.$$ 

Taking infimums over $m_1, m_2 \in M$ then implies

$$\|x_1 + x_2 + M\| \leq \|x_1 + M\| + \|x_2 + M\|.$$ 

and we have completed the proof the $(X/M, \|\cdot\|)$ is a normed space.

2. Since $\pi(a) = \inf_{m \in M} \|x + m\| \leq \|x\|$ for all $x \in X$, $\|\pi\| \leq 1$. To see $\|\pi\| = 1$, let $x \in X \setminus M$ so that $\pi(x) \neq 0$. Given $\alpha \in (0, 1)$, there exists $m \in M$ such that

$$\|x + m\| \leq \alpha^{-1} \|\pi(x)\|.$$ 

Therefore,

$$\pi(x) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \pi(x + m_n) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \pi(x_n) \in \pi(N)$$

which shows $\|\pi\| \geq \alpha$. Since $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ is arbitrary we conclude that $\|\pi\| = 1$.

3. Since $\|\pi\| < 1$ if $\varepsilon > 0$ then $\pi(B^X(0, \varepsilon)) \subset B^{X/M}(0, \varepsilon)$. Conversely if $y \in X$ and $\pi(y) \in B^{X/M}(0, \varepsilon)$ then there exists $m \in M$ so that $\|y + m\| < \varepsilon$, i.e. $y + m \in B^X(0, \varepsilon)$. Since $\pi(y) = \pi(y + m)$, this shows that $\pi(y) \in (B^X(0, \varepsilon))$ and so $\pi(B^X(0, \varepsilon)) = B^{X/M}(0, \varepsilon)$ for all $\varepsilon > 0$. For general $a \in X$ and $\varepsilon > 0$ we have

$$\pi(B^X(a, \varepsilon)) = \pi(a + B^X(0, \varepsilon)) = \pi(a) + \pi(B^X(0, \varepsilon)) = \pi(a) + B^{X/M}(0, \varepsilon) = B^{X/M}(\pi(a), \varepsilon).$$

4. Let $\pi(x_n) \in X/M$ be a sequence such that $\sum \|\pi(x_n)\| < \infty$. As above there exists $m_n \in M$ such that $\{\pi(x_n)\} \geq \frac{1}{2} \|x_n + m_n\|$ and hence $\sum \|x_n + m_n\| \leq 2 \sum \|\pi(x_n)\| < \infty$. Since $X$ is complete, $x := \sum_{n=1}^\infty (x_n + m_n)$ exists in $X$ and therefore by the continuity of $\pi$,

$$\pi(x) = \sum_{n=1}^\infty \pi(x_n + m_n) = \sum_{n=1}^\infty \pi(x_n)$$

showing $X/M$ is complete.

5. The existence of $\hat{T}$ is guaranteed by the “factor theorem” from linear algebra. Moreover $\|\hat{T}\| = \|T\|$ because

$$\|T\| = \|\hat{T} \circ \pi\| \leq \|\hat{T}\| \|\pi\| = \|\hat{T}\|$$

and

$$\|\hat{T}\| = \sup_{x \notin M} \frac{\|\hat{T}(\pi(x))\|}{\|\pi(x)\|} = \sup_{x \notin M} \frac{\|Tx\|}{\|x\|}$$

$$\geq \sup_{x \notin M} \frac{\|Tx\|}{\|x\|} = \sup_{x \neq 0} \frac{\|Tx\|}{\|x\|} = \|T\|.$$ 

6. First we will show that $\pi(N)$ is closed whenever $N$ is a closed subspace of $X$ containing $M$. To verify this, let $\{x_n\} \subset N$ be a sequence such that $\{\pi(x_n)\} \subset N$ is Cauchy in $\pi(X/M)$. As in the proof of item 3, we may find $m_n \in M$ such that $x = \lim_{n \to \infty} (x_n + m_n)$ exists with $x \in N$ as $N$ is closed. Therefore

$$\pi(x) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \pi(x_n + m_n) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \pi(x_n) \in \pi(N).$$
which shows $\pi(N)$ is closed. Moreover, $x \in \pi^{-1}(\pi(N))$ iff $\pi(x) \in \pi(N)$ which happens iff $x + M \subset x + N$, i.e. iff $x \in N$. This show $\pi^{-1}(\pi(N)) = N$.

Finally, if $\bar{N}$ is a closed subspace of $\pi(X/M)$, then $N := \pi^{-1}(\bar{N})$ is a closed (is continuous) subspace of $X$ containing $M$ such that $\pi(N) = \bar{N}$.

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{Theorem A.25. Let } X & \text{ be a Banach space. Then } \\
1. \text{ Identifying } X & \subset X^{**}, \text{ the weak } \ast \text{ topology on } X^{**} \text{ induces the weak topology on } X. \text{ More explicitly, the map } x \in X \to \hat{x} \in \hat{X} = X \text{ is a homeomorphism when } X \text{ is equipped with its weak topology and } X \text{ with the relative topology coming from the weak-} \ast \text{ topology on } X^{**}. \\
2. \text{ Letting } C & \subset X^{**} \text{ be dense in the weak-} \ast \text{ topology on } X^{**}. \\
3. \text{ Letting } C & \text{ be the closed unit balls in } X \text{ and } X^{**} \text{ respectively, then } \hat{C} := \{ \hat{x} \in C^{**} : x \in C \} \text{ is dense in } C^{**} \text{ in the weak } \ast \text{ topology on } X^{**}. \\
4. \text{ Let } C & \text{ be weakly compact and hence by item } 1. \text{, there exists } x \in X \text{ such that Eq. (A.6) holds. The problem is that } x \text{ may not be in } C. \text{ To remedy this, let } N := \cap_{k=1}^{n} \text{Null}(f_k) = \text{Null}(T), \text{ where } T : X \to X/N \cong C^n \text{ be the projection map and } \hat{f}_k \in (X/N)^* \text{ be chosen so that } f_k = \hat{f}_k \circ \pi \text{ for } k = 1, 2, \ldots, n. \text{ Then we have produced } x \in X \text{ such that } \lambda(f_1), \ldots, \lambda(f_n) = (f_1(x), \ldots, f_n(x)). \\
\end{align*} \]

Since $\{\hat{f}_1, \ldots, \hat{f}_n\}$ is a basis for $(X/N)^*$ we find

\[ \|\pi(x)\| = \sup_{\alpha \in C^n \setminus \{0\}} \frac{|\sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha_i \hat{f}_i(\pi(x))|}{\|\sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha_i \hat{f}_i\|} = \sup_{\alpha \in C^n \setminus \{0\}} \frac{\|\sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha_i \lambda(f_i)\|}{\|\sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha_i f_i\|} \leq \|\lambda\| \sup_{\alpha \in C^n \setminus \{0\}} \frac{\|\sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha_i f_i\|}{\|\sum_{i=1}^{n} \alpha_i f_i\|} = 1. \]

Hence we have shown $\|\pi(x)\| \leq 1$ and therefore for any $\alpha > 1$ there exists $y = x + n \in X$ such that $\|y\| < \alpha$ and $\lambda(f_1), \ldots, \lambda(f_n) = (f_1(y), \ldots, f_n(y))$. Hence

\[ |\lambda(f_i) - f_i(y)/\alpha| \leq |f_i(y) - \alpha^{-1} f_i(y) - f_i(y)| \leq (1 - \alpha^{-1})|f_i(y)| \]

which can be arbitrarily small (i.e. less than $\varepsilon$) by choosing $\alpha$ sufficiently close to 1.

4. Let $\tilde{C} := \{ \hat{x} : x \in C \} \subset C^{**} \subset X^{**}$. If $X$ is reflexive, $\tilde{C} = C^{**}$ is weak - * compact and hence by item 1., $C$ is weakly compact in $X$. Conversely if $C$ is weakly compact, then $\tilde{C} \subset C^{**}$ is weak - * compact being the continuous image of a compact map. Since the weak - * topology on $X^{**}$ is Hausdorff, it follows that $\tilde{C}$ is weak - * closed and so by item 3, $C^{**} = \tilde{C} = C$. So if $\lambda \in X^{**}$, $\lambda/\|\lambda\| \in C^{**} = \tilde{C}$, i.e. there exists $x \in C$ such that $\hat{x} = \lambda/\|\lambda\|$. This shows $\lambda = (\|\lambda\| x)$ and therefore $\hat{X} = X^{**}$. 

\[ \square \]
A.4 Rayleigh Quotient

**Theorem A.26 (Rayleigh quotient).** If \( H \) is a Hilbert space and \( T \in B(H) \) is a bounded self-adjoint operator, then
\[
M := \sup_{f \neq 0} \frac{|\langle T f, f \rangle|}{\|f\|^2} = \|T\| = \sup_{f \neq 0} \frac{\|T f\|}{\|f\|}.
\]
Moreover, if there exists a non-zero element \( f \in H \) such that
\[
\frac{|\langle T f, f \rangle|}{\|f\|^2} = \|T\|
\]
then \( f \) is an eigenvector of \( T \) with \( Tf = \lambda f \) and \( \lambda \in \{\pm \|T\|\} \).

**Proof. First proof.** Applying Eq. (B.3) with \( Q(f, g) = \langle Tf, f \rangle \) and Eq. (B.4) with \( Q(f, g) = (f, g) \) along with the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality implies,
\[
4 \Re \langle Tf, g \rangle = \langle T(f + g), (f + g) \rangle - \langle T(f - g), (f - g) \rangle
\leq M \left[ \|f + g\|^2 + \|f - g\|^2 \right] = 2M \left[ \|f\|^2 + \|g\|^2 \right].
\]
Replacing \( f \) by \( e^{i\theta} f \) where \( \theta \) is chosen so that \( e^{i\theta} \langle Tf, g \rangle = |\langle Tf, g \rangle| \) then shows
\[
4 |\langle Tf, g \rangle| \leq 2M \left[ \|f\|^2 + \|g\|^2 \right]
\]
and therefore,
\[
\|T\| = \sup_{\|f\| = \|g\| = 1} |\langle f, Tg \rangle| \leq M
\]
and since it is clear \( M \leq \|T\| \) we have shown \( M = \|T\| \).

If \( f \in H \setminus \{0\} \) and \( \|T\| = |\langle Tf, f \rangle|/\|f\|^2 \) then, using Schwarz's inequality,
\[
\|T\| = \frac{|\langle Tf, f \rangle|}{\|f\|^2} \leq \frac{\|T f\|}{\|f\|} \leq \|T\|.
\]
(A.9)

This implies \( |\langle Tf, f \rangle| = \|T f\| \|f\| \) and forces equality in Schwarz's inequality. So by Theorem ??, \( Tf \) and \( f \) are linearly dependent, i.e. \( Tf = \lambda f \) for some \( \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \). Substituting this into (A.9) shows that \( |\lambda| = \|T\| \). Since \( T \) is self-adjoint,
\[
\lambda \|f\|^2 = \langle \lambda f, f \rangle = \langle Tf, f \rangle = \langle f, Tf \rangle = \langle f, \lambda f \rangle = \lambda \langle f, f \rangle = \bar{\lambda} \|f\|^2,
\]
which implies that \( \lambda \in \mathbb{R} \) and therefore, \( \lambda \in \{\pm \|T\|\} \).

**Second proof.** By the spectral theorem for bounded operators of Chapter ?? below, it suffices to prove the theorem in the case where \( T = M_g \in B(H) \) where \( H = L^2(\Omega, \mu) \), \( (\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \mu) \) is a finite measure space, and \( g : \Omega \to \mathbb{R} \) is a bounded measurable function. In this case,
\[
|\langle Tf, f \rangle| = \int_{\Omega} g |f|^2 d\mu \leq \|g\|_{L^\infty(\mu)} \int_{\Omega} |f|^2 d\mu = \|g\|_{L^\infty(\mu)} \|f\|_{L^2(\mu)}^2.
\]

If \( m < \|g\|_{L^\infty(\mu)} = \|T\|_{op} \) then we can choose \( f = 1_A \) and \( \varepsilon \in \{\pm 1\} \) so that \( \mu(A) > 0 \) and \( \varepsilon g1_A \geq m1_A \). For this \( f \) it follows that
\[
|\langle Tf, f \rangle| = \int_A \varepsilon g d\mu \geq m \cdot \mu(A) = m \|f\|_{L^2(\mu)}^2.
\]
Combining these last two assertions shows
\[
m \leq \sup_{\|f\| \neq 0} \frac{|\langle Tf, f \rangle|}{\|f\|^2} \leq \|T\|_{op}
\]
which completes this proof as \( m < \|T\|_{op} \) was arbitrary. 

Spectral Theorem (Compact Operator Case)

Before giving the general spectral theorem for bounded self-adjoint operators in the next chapter, we pause to consider the special case of “compact” operators. The theory in this setting looks very much like the finite dimensional matrix case.

B.1 Basics of Compact Operators

Definition B.1 (Compact Operator). Let \( A : X \to Y \) be a bounded operator between two Banach spaces. Then \( A \) is compact if \( A[B_X(0,1)] \) is precompact in \( Y \) or equivalently for any \( \{x_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \subset X \) such that \( \|x_n\| \leq 1 \) for all \( n \) the sequence \( y_n := Ax_n \in Y \) has a convergent subsequence.

Definition B.2. A bounded operator \( A : X \to Y \) is said to have finite rank if \( \text{Ran}(A) \subset Y \) is finite dimensional.

The following result is a simple consequence of Theorem ?? and Corollary ??.

Corollary B.3. If \( A : X \to Y \) is a finite rank operator, then \( A \) is compact. In particular if either \( \text{dim}(X) < \infty \) or \( \text{dim}(Y) < \infty \) then any bounded operator \( A : X \to Y \) is finite rank and hence compact.

Theorem B.4. Let \( X \) and \( Y \) be Banach spaces and \( K := \mathcal{K}(X,Y) \) denote the compact operators from \( X \) to \( Y \). Then \( \mathcal{K}(X,Y) \) is a norm-closed subspace of \( B(X,Y) \). In particular, operator norm limits of finite rank operators are compact.

**Proof.** Using the sequential definition of compactness it is easily seen that \( K \) is a vector subspace of \( B(X,Y) \). To finish the proof, we must show that \( K \in \mathcal{K}(X,Y) \) is compact if there exists \( K_n \in \mathcal{K}(X,Y) \) such that \( \lim_{n \to \infty} \|K_n - K\|_{op} = 0 \).

**First Proof.** Let \( U := B_0(1) \) be the unit ball in \( X \). Given \( \varepsilon > 0 \), choose \( N \in \mathbb{N}(\varepsilon) \) such that \( \|K_N - K\| \leq \varepsilon \). Using the fact that \( K_N U \) is precompact, choose a finite subset \( \Lambda \subset U \) such that \( K_N U \subset \bigcup_{\sigma \in \Lambda} B_{K_N \sigma}(\varepsilon) \). Then given \( y = Kx \in KU \) we have \( K_N x \in B_{K_N \sigma}(\varepsilon) \) for some \( \sigma \in \Lambda \) and for this \( \sigma; \)

\[ \|y - K_N \sigma\| = \|Kx - K_N \sigma\| \leq \|Kx - K_N x\| + \|K_N x - K_N \sigma\| < \varepsilon \|x\| + \varepsilon < 2\varepsilon. \]

This shows \( KU \subset \bigcup_{\sigma \in \Lambda} B_{K_N \sigma}(2\varepsilon) \) and therefore is \( KU \) is \( 2\varepsilon \) - bounded for all \( \varepsilon > 0 \), i.e. \( KU \) is totally bounded and hence precompact.

**Second Proof.** Suppose \( \{x_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) is a bounded sequence in \( X \). By compactness, there is a subsequence \( \{x_n^1\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) of \( \{x_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) such that \( \{K_1 x_n^1\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) is convergent in \( Y \). Working inductively, we may construct subsequences \( \{x_n^1\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \supset \{x_n^2\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \supset \cdots \supset \{x_n^m\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \supset \cdots \)

such that \( \{K_n x_n^m\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) is convergent in \( Y \) for each \( m \). By the usual Cantor’s diagonalization procedure, let \( \sigma_n := x_n^1 \), then \( \{\sigma_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) is a subsequence of \( \{x_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) such that \( \{K_n \sigma_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) is convergent for all \( m \). Since

\[ \|K \sigma_n - K \sigma_l\| \leq \|(K - K_m) \sigma_n\| + \|K_m (\sigma_n - \sigma_l)\| + \|(K_m - K) \sigma_l\| \leq 2 \|K - K_m\| + \|K_m (\sigma_n - \sigma_l)\|, \]

\[ \lim_{n,l \to \infty} \sup \|K \sigma_n - K \sigma_l\| \leq 2 \|K - K_m\| \to 0 \text{ as } m \to \infty, \]

which shows \( \{K \sigma_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \) is Cauchy and hence convergent.

**Example B.5.** Let \( X = \ell^2 = Y \) and \( \lambda_n \in \mathbb{C} \) such that \( \lim_{n \to \infty} \lambda_n = 0 \), then \( A : X \to Y \) defined by \( (Ax)(n) = \lambda_n x(n) \) is compact. To verify this claim, for each \( m \in \mathbb{N} \) let \( (A_m x)(n) = \lambda_n x(n) 1_{n \leq m} \). In matrix language,

\[ A = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & \cdots \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda_m \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad A_m = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \cdots \\ \lambda_1 & 0 & \cdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots \\ 0 & \cdots & \cdots \\ \lambda_m & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \]

Then \( A_m \) is finite rank and \( \|A - A_m\|_{op} = \max_{n > m} |\lambda_n| \to 0 \) as \( m \to \infty \). The claim now follows from Theorem B.3.
We will see more examples of compact operators below in Section B.4 and Exercise ?? below.

**Lemma B.6.** If $X \xrightarrow{A} Y \xrightarrow{B} Z$ are bounded operators between Banach spaces such that the constant $A$ or $B$ is compact then the composition $BA : X \rightarrow Z$ is also compact. In particular if $\dim X = \infty$ and $A \in L(X,Y)$ is an invertible operator such that $A^{-1} \in L(Y,X)$, then $A$ is not compact.

**Proof.** Let $B_X(0,1)$ be the open unit ball in $X$. If $A$ is compact and $B$ is bounded, then $BA(B_X(0,1)) \subset BAB_X(0,1))$ which is compact since the image of compact sets under continuous maps are compact. Hence we conclude that $B(0,1)$ is compact, being the closed subset of the compact set $B(0,1))$. If $A$ is continuous and $B$ is compact, then $A(B(0,1))$ is a bounded set and so by the compactness of $B$, $B(B(0,1))$ is a precompact subset of $B$.

**Alternatively:** Suppose that $\{x_n\}_{n=1}^\infty \subset X$ is a bounded sequence. If $A$ is compact, then $y_n := Ax_n$ has a convergent subsequence, $\{y_{n_k}\}_{k=1}^\infty$. Since $B$ is continuous it follows that $z_{n_k} := By_{n_k} = Bx_{n_k}$ is a convergent subsequence of $\{Bx_{n_k}\}_{n=1}^\infty$. Similarly if $A$ is bounded and $B$ is compact then $y_n = Ax_n$ defines a bounded sequence inside of $Y$. By compactness of $B$, there is a subsequence $\{y_{n_k}\}_{k=1}^\infty$ for which $\{Bx_{n_k} = By_{n_k}\}_{k=1}^\infty$ is convergent in $Z$.

For the second statement, if $A$ were compact then $I_X := A^{-1}A$ would be compact as well. As $I_X$ takes the unit ball to the unit ball, the identity is compact iff $\dim X < \infty$.

**Corollary B.7.** Let $X$ be a Banach space and $K(X) := K(X,X)$. Then $K(X)$ is a norm-closed ideal of $L(X)$ which contains $I_X$ iff $\dim X < \infty$.

**Lemma B.8.** Suppose that $T, T_n \in L(X,Y)$ for $n \in \mathbb{N}$ where $X$ and $Y$ are normed spaces. If $T_n \xrightarrow{\ast} T$, $M = \sup_n \|T_n\| < \infty$ and $x_n \rightarrow x$ in $X$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$, then $T_n x_n \rightarrow T x$ in $Y$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$. Moreover if $K \subset X$ is a compact set then

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sup_{x \in K} \|T x - T_n x\| = 0. \quad (B.1)$$

**Proof.** 1. We have,

$$\|T x - T_n x\| \leq \|T x - T_n x\| + \|T_n x - T_n x\|
\leq \|T x - T_n x\| + M \|x - x_n\| \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

2. For sake of contradiction, suppose that

$$\limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sup_{x \in K} \|T x - T_n x\| = \varepsilon > 0.$$

In this case we can find $\{x_n\}_{n=1}^\infty \subset \mathbb{N}$ and $x_n \in K$ such that $\|T x_n - T_n x_n\| \geq \varepsilon/2$. Since $K$ is compact, by passing to a subsequence if necessary, we may assume $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} x_n = x$ exists in $K$. On the other hand by part 1, we know that

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \|T x_n - T_n x_n\| = \left(\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} T x_n - \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} T_n x_n\right) = \|T x - T x\| = 0.$$

2 alternate proof. Given $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists $\{x_1, \ldots, x_N\} \subset K$ such that $K \subset \bigcup_{n=1}^N B_{x_n}(\varepsilon)$. If $x \in K$, choose $l$ such that $x \in B_{x_n}(\varepsilon)$ in which case,

$$\|T x - T_n x\| \leq \|T x - T x_l\| + \|T x_l - T_n x_l\| + \|T_n x_l - T_n x\|$$

and therefore it follows that

$$\sup_{x \in K} \|T x - T_n x\| \leq \left(\|T\| + M\right) \varepsilon + \max_{1 \leq l \leq N} \|T x_l - T_n x_l\|$$

and therefore,

$$\limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sup_{x \in K} \|T x - T_n x\| \leq \left(\|T\| + M\right) \varepsilon.$$

As $\varepsilon > 0$ was arbitrary we conclude that Eq. (B.1) holds.

**B.2 Compact Operators on Hilbert spaces**

For the rest of this section, let $H$ and $B$ be Hilbert spaces and $U := \{x \in H : \|x\| < 1\}$ be the open unit ball in $H$.

**Proposition B.9.** A bounded operator $K : H \rightarrow B$ is compact iff there exists finite rank operators, $K_n : H \rightarrow B$, such that $\|K - K_n\| \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$.

**Proof.** Suppose that $K : H \rightarrow B$. Since $\overline{K(U)}$ is compact it contains a countable dense subset and from this it follows that $\overline{K(H)}$ is a separable subspace of $B$. Let $\{\varphi_\ell\}$ be an orthonormal basis for $\overline{K(H)} \subset B$ and

$$P_n y = \sum_{\ell=1}^n \langle y, \varphi_\ell \rangle \varphi_\ell$$
showing $K^*$ is a limit of finite rank operators and hence compact.

**Second Proof.** Let $\{x_n\}_{n=1}^\infty$ be a bounded sequence in $B$, then

$$
\|K^* x_n - K^* x_m\|^2 = \langle x_n - x_m, K K^* (x_n - x_m) \rangle \leq 2C \|K K^* (x_n - x_m)\| \tag{B.2}
$$

where $C$ is a bound on the norms of the $x_n$. Since $\{K^* x_n\}_{n=1}^\infty$ is also a bounded sequence, by the compactness of $K$ there is a subsequence $\{x'_{n'}\}$ of the $\{x_n\}$ such that $K^* x'_{n'}$ is convergent and hence by Eq. (B.2), so is the sequence $\{K^* x'_{n'}\}$.

**Example B.11.** Let $(X, B, \mu)$ be a $\sigma$-finite measure spaces whose $\sigma$– algebra is countably generated by sets of finite measure. If $k \in L^2 (X \times X, \mu \otimes \mu)$, then $K : L^2 (\mu) \rightarrow L^2 (\mu)$ defined by

$$
K f (x) := \int_X k (x, y) f (y) \, d\mu (y)
$$

is a compact operator.

**Proof.** First observe that

$$
|K f (x)|^2 \leq \|f\|^2 \int_X |k (x, y)|^2 \, d\mu (y)
$$

and hence

$$
\|K f \|^2 \leq \|f\|^2 \int_{X \times X} |k (x, y)|^2 \, d\mu (x) \, d\mu (y)
$$

from which it follows that $\|K\|_{op} \leq \|k\|_{L^2 (\mu \otimes \mu)}$.

Now let $\{\psi_n\}_{n=1}^\infty$ be an orthonormal basis for $L^2 (X, \mu)$ and let

$$
k_N (x, y) := \sum_{m,n=1}^N \langle k, \psi_m \otimes \psi_n \rangle \psi_m \otimes \psi_n
$$

where $f \otimes g (x, y) := f (x) g (y)$. Then

$$
K_N f (x) := \int_X k_N (x, y) f (y) \, d\mu (y) = \sum_{m,n=1}^N \langle k, \psi_m \otimes \psi_n \rangle \langle f, \psi_m \rangle \psi_n
$$

is a finite rank and hence compact operator. Since

$$
\|K - K_N\|_{op} \leq \|k - k_N\|_{L^2 (\mu \otimes \mu)} \to 0 \text{ as } N \to \infty
$$

it follows that $K$ is compact as well.

**B.3 The Spectral Theorem for Self Adjoint Compact Operators**

For the rest of this section, $K \in \mathcal{K} (H) := \mathcal{K} (H, H)$ will be a self-adjoint compact operator or S.A.C.O. for short. Because of Proposition B.9, we might expect compact operators to behave very much like finite dimensional matrices. This is typically the case as we will see below.

**Example B.12 (Model S.A.C.O.).** Let $H = \ell_2$ and $K$ be the diagonal matrix

$$
K = \begin{pmatrix}
\lambda_1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots \\
0 & \lambda_2 & 0 & \cdots \\
0 & 0 & \lambda_3 & \cdots \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots
\end{pmatrix},
$$

where $\lim_{n \to \infty} |\lambda_n| = 0$ and $\lambda_n \in \mathbb{R}$. Then $K$ is a self-adjoint compact operator. This assertion was proved in Example B.5.
Lemma B.13. Let $Q : H \times H \to \mathbb{C}$ be a symmetric sesquilinear form on $H$ where $Q$ is symmetric means $Q(h, k) = Q(k, h)$ for all $h, k \in H$. Letting $Q(h) := Q(h, h)$, then for all $h, k \in H$,

$$Q(h + k) = Q(h) + Q(k) + 2\Re Q(h, k), \quad (B.3)$$

$$Q(h + k) + Q(h - k) = 2Q(h) + 2Q(k), \quad (B.4)$$

$$Q(h + k) - Q(h - k) = 4\Re Q(h, k). \quad (B.5)$$

Proof. The simple proof is left as an exercise to the reader. $\blacksquare$

Exercise B.1 (This may be skipped). Suppose that $A : H \to H$ is a bounded self-adjoint operator on $H$. Show:

1. $f(x) := \langle Ax, x \rangle \in \mathbb{R}$ for all $x \in H$.
2. If there exists $x_0 \in H$ with $\|x_0\| = 1$ such that

$$\lambda_0 := \sup_{\|x\|=1} \langle Ax, x \rangle = \langle Ax_0, x_0 \rangle$$

then $Ax_0 = \lambda_0 x_0$. Hint: Given $y \in H$ let $c(t) := \frac{x_0 + ty}{\|x_0 + ty\|}$ for $t$ near 0. Then apply the first derivative test to the function $g(t) = \langle Ac(t), c(t) \rangle$.

3. If we further assume that $A$ is compact, then $A$ has at least one eigenvector.

Proposition B.14. Let $K$ be a S.A.C.O., then either $\lambda = \|K\|$ or $\lambda = -\|K\|$ is an eigenvalue of $K$.

Proof. (For those who have done Exercise B.1, that exercise along with Proposition A.26 constitutes a proof.) Without loss of generality we may assume that $K$ is non-zero since otherwise the result is trivial. By Proposition A.26 there exists $u_n \in H$ such that $\|u_n\| = 1$ and

$$\frac{|\langle u_n, Ku_n \rangle|}{\|u_n\|^2} = |\langle u_n, Ku_n \rangle| \to \|K\| \text{ as } n \to \infty. \quad (B.6)$$

By passing to a subsequence if necessary, we may assume that $\lambda := \lim_{n \to \infty} |\langle u_n, Ku_n \rangle|$ exists and $\lambda \in \{\pm \|K\|\}$. By passing to a further subsequence if necessary, we may assume, using the compactness of $K$, that $Ku_n$ is convergent as well. We now compute:

$$0 \leq \|Ku_n - \lambda u_n\|^2 = \|Ku_n\|^2 - 2\lambda \langle Ku_n, u_n \rangle + \lambda^2 \leq \lambda^2 - 2\lambda \langle Ku_n, u_n \rangle + \lambda^2 \to \lambda^2 - 2\lambda^2 + \lambda^2 = 0 \text{ as } n \to \infty.$$

Hence

$$Ku_n - \lambda u_n \to 0 \text{ as } n \to \infty \quad (B.7)$$

and therefore

$$u := \lim_{n \to \infty} u_n = \frac{1}{\lambda} \lim_{n \to \infty} Ku_n$$

exists. By the continuity of the inner product, $\|u\| = 1 \neq 0$. By passing to the limit in Eq. (B.7) we find that $Ku = \lambda u$.

Theorem B.15 (Compact Operator Spectral Theorem). Suppose that $K : H \to H$ is a non-zero S.A.C.O., then

1. there exists at least one eigenvalue $\lambda \in \{\pm \|K\|\}$.
2. There are at most countably many non-zero eigenvalues, $\{\lambda_n\}_{n=1}^\infty$, where $N = \infty$ is allowed. (Unless $K$ is finite rank (i.e. $\dim \text{Ran}(K) < \infty$, $N$ will be infinite.)
3. The $\lambda_n$’s (including multiplicities) may be arranged so that $|\lambda_n| \geq |\lambda_{n+1}|$ for all $n$. If $N = \infty$ then $\lim_{n \to \infty} |\lambda_n| = 0$. (In particular any eigenspace for $K$ with non-zero eigenvalue is finite dimensional.)
4. The eigenvectors $\{\varphi_n\}_{n=1}^\infty$ can be chosen to be an O.N. set such that $H = \overline{\text{span}}\{\varphi_n\} \oplus \text{Nul}(K)$.
5. Using the $\{\varphi_n\}_{n=1}^\infty$ above,

$$Kf = \sum_{n=1}^N \lambda_n \langle f, \varphi_n \rangle \varphi_n \text{ for all } f \in H. \quad (B.8)$$

6. The spectrum of $K$ is $\sigma(K) = \{0\} \cup \{\lambda_n : n < N + 1\}$ if $\dim H = \infty$, otherwise $\sigma(K) = \{\lambda_n : n \leq N\}$ with $N \leq \dim H$.

Proof. We will find $\lambda_n$’s and $\varphi_n$’s recursively. Let $\lambda_1 \in \{\pm \|K\|\}$ and $\varphi_1 \in H$ such that $K\varphi_1 = \lambda_1 \varphi_1$ as in Proposition B.14.

Take $M_1 = \text{span}(\varphi_1)$ so $K(M_1) \subset M_1$. By Lemma B.25, $K|_{M_1^\perp} \subset M_1^\perp$. Define $K_1 : M_1^\perp \to M_1^\perp$ via $K_1 \varphi = K|_{M_1^\perp} \varphi$. Then $K_1$ is again a compact operator. If $K_1 = 0$, we are done. If $K_1 \neq 0$, by Proposition B.14 there exists $\lambda_2 \in \{\pm \|K_1\|\}$ and $\varphi_2 \in M_1^\perp$ such that $\|\varphi_2\| = 1$ and $K_1 \varphi_2 = \lambda_2 \varphi_2$. Let $M_2 := \text{span}(\varphi_1, \varphi_2)$.

Again $K(M_2) \subset M_2$ and hence $K_2 := K|M_2 : M_2^\perp \to M_2^\perp$ is compact and if $K_2 = 0$ we are done. When $K_2 \neq 0$, we apply Proposition B.14 again to find $\lambda_3 \in \{\pm \|K_2\|\}$ and $\varphi_3 \in M_2^\perp$ such that $\|\varphi_3\| = 1$ and $K_2 \varphi_3 = \lambda_3 \varphi_3$.

Continuing this way indefinitely or until we reach a point where $K_n = 0$, we construct a sequence $\{\lambda_n\}_{n=1}^N$ of eigenvalues and orthonormal eigenvectors $\{\varphi_n\}_{n=1}^N$ such that $|\lambda_n| \geq |\lambda_{n+1}|$ with the further property that

$$|\lambda_n| = \sup_{\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \ldots, \varphi_{n-1}} \frac{\|K\varphi\|}{\|\varphi\|}. \quad (B.9)$$
When $N < \infty$, the remaining results in the theorem are easily verified. So from now on let us assume that $N = \infty$.

If $\varepsilon := \lim_{n \to \infty} |\lambda_n| > 0$, then $\{\lambda_n^{-1} \varphi_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ is a bounded sequence in $H$. Hence, by the compactness of $K$, there exists a subsequence $\{n_k : k \in \mathbb{N}\}$ of $\mathbb{N}$ such that $\varphi_{n_k} = \lambda_{n_k}^{-1} K \varphi_{n_k}$ is convergent. However, since $\{\varphi_{n_k}\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$ is an orthonormal set, this is impossible and hence we must conclude that $\varepsilon := \lim_{n \to \infty} |\lambda_n| = 0$.

Let $M := \text{span}\{\varphi_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$. Then $K(M) \subset M$ and hence, by Lemma 3.25, $K(M^\perp) \subset M^\perp$. Using Eq. (B.9),

$$\|K|_{M^\perp}\| \leq \|K|_{M_n}\| = |\lambda_n| \to 0 \text{ as } n \to \infty$$

showing $K|M^\perp| = 0$. Define $P_0$ to be orthogonal projection onto $M^\perp$. Then for $f \in H$,

$$f = P_0 f + (1 - P_0) f = P_0 f + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle f, \varphi_n \rangle \varphi_n$$

and

$$K f = K P_0 f + K \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle f, \varphi_n \rangle \varphi_n = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n \langle f, \varphi_n \rangle \varphi_n$$

which proves Eq. (B.8).

Since $\{\lambda_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \subset \sigma(K)$ and $\sigma(K)$ is closed, it follows that $0 \in \sigma(K)$ and hence $\{\lambda_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \cup \{0\} \subset \sigma(K)$. Suppose that $z \notin \{\lambda_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \cup \{0\}$ and let $d$ be the distance between $z$ and $\{\lambda_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty} \cup \{0\}$. Notice that $d > 0$ because $\lim_{n \to \infty} \lambda_n = 0$.

A few simple computations show that:

$$(K - z I) f = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle f, \varphi_n \rangle (\lambda_n - z) \varphi_n - z P_0 f,$$

$$(K - z)^{-1} \text{ exists},$$

$$(K - z)^{-1} f = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle f, \varphi_n \rangle (\lambda_n - z)^{-1} \varphi_n - z^{-1} P_0 f,$$

and

$$\|(K - z I)^{-1} f\|^2 = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |\langle f, \varphi_n \rangle|^2 \frac{1}{|\lambda_n - z|^2} + \frac{1}{|z|^2} \|P_0 f\|^2$$

$$\leq \left( \frac{1}{d} \right)^2 \left( \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |\langle f, \varphi_n \rangle|^2 + \|P_0 f\|^2 \right) = \frac{1}{d^2} \|f\|^2.$$

We have thus shown that $(K - z I)^{-1}$ exists, $\|(K - z I)^{-1}\| \leq d^{-1} < \infty$ and hence $z \notin \sigma(K)$.

\[ \square \]

**Theorem B.16 (Structure of Compact Operators).** Let $K : H \to B$ be a compact operator. Then there exists $N \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\}$, orthonormal subsets $\{\varphi_n\}_{n=1}^{N} \subset H$ and $\{\psi_n\}_{n=1}^{N} \subset B$ and a sequence $\{\alpha_n\}_{n=1}^{N} \subset \mathbb{R}_+$ such that $\alpha_1 \geq \alpha_2 \geq \ldots$ (with $\lim_{n \to \infty} \alpha_n = 0$ if $N = \infty$), $\|\psi_n\| \leq 1$ for all $n$ and

$$K f = \sum_{n=1}^{N} \alpha_n \langle f, \varphi_n \rangle \psi_n \text{ for all } f \in H. \quad (B.10)$$

**Proof.** Since $K^* K$ is a self-adjoint compact operator, Theorem B.15 implies there exists an orthonormal set $\{\varphi_n\}_{n=1}^{N} \subset H$ and positive numbers $\{\lambda_n\}_{n=1}^{N}$ such that

$$K^* K \psi = \sum_{n=1}^{N} \lambda_n \langle \psi, \varphi_n \rangle \varphi_n \text{ for all } \psi \in H.$$

Let $A$ be the positive square root of $K^* K$ defined by

$$A \psi := \sum_{n=1}^{N} \sqrt{\lambda_n} \langle \psi, \varphi_n \rangle \varphi_n \text{ for all } \psi \in H.$$

A simple computation shows, $A^2 = K^* K$, and therefore,

$$\|A \psi\|^2 = \langle A \psi, A \psi \rangle = \langle \psi, A^2 \psi \rangle$$

$$= \langle \psi, K^* K \psi \rangle = \langle K \psi, K \psi \rangle = \|K \psi\|^2$$

for all $\psi \in H$. Hence we may define a unitary operator, $u : \text{Ran}(A) \to \text{Ran}(K)$ by the formula

$$u A \psi = K \psi \text{ for all } \psi \in H.$$

We then have

$$K \psi = u A \psi = \sum_{n=1}^{N} \sqrt{\lambda_n} \langle \psi, \varphi_n \rangle w \varphi_n \quad (B.11)$$

which proves the result with $\psi_n := w \varphi_n$ and $\alpha_n = \sqrt{\lambda_n}$.

It is instructive to find $\psi_n$ explicitly and to verify Eq. (B.11) by brute force. Since $\varphi_n = \lambda_n^{-1/2} A \varphi_n$,

$$\psi_n = \lambda_n^{-1/2} u A \varphi_n = \lambda_n^{-1/2} K \varphi_n$$

and

$$\langle K \varphi_n, K \varphi_m \rangle = \langle \varphi_n, K^* K \varphi_m \rangle = \lambda_n \delta_{mn}.$$

This verifies that $\{\psi_n\}_{n=1}^{N}$ is an orthonormal set. Moreover,
real and symmetric, it is easily seen that
\[ K_{k} \]
Exercise B.2 (Continuation of Example ??). Let \( H := L^2 ([0, 1], m) \), \( k(x, y) := \min (x, y) \) for \( x, y \in [0, 1] \) and define \( K : H \to H \) by
\[
Kf(x) = \int_0^1 k(x, y) f(y) \, dy.
\]
From Example B.11 we know that \( K \) is a compact operator\(^4\) on \( H \). Since \( k \) is real and symmetric, it is easily seen that \( K \) is self-adjoint. Show:

1. If \( g \in C^2 ([0, 1]) \) with \( g(0) = 0 = g'(1) \), then \( Kg'' = -g \). Use this to conclude \( \langle Kg|g'' \rangle = -\langle f|g \rangle \) for all \( g \in C^\infty_c (0, 1) \) and consequently that \( \text{Nul}(K) = \{0\} \).
2. Now suppose that \( f \in H \) is an eigenvector of \( K \) with eigenvalue \( \lambda \neq 0 \). Show that there is a version\(^3\) of \( f \) which is in \( C ([0, 1]) \cap C^2 ([0, 1]) \) and this version, still denoted by \( f \), solves
\[
\lambda f'' = -f \quad \text{with} \quad f(0) = f'(1) = 0.
\]
where \( f'(1) := \lim_{x\uparrow 1} f'(x) \).
3. Use Eq. (B.12) to find all the eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of \( K \).
4. Use the results above along with the spectral Theorem B.15 to show
\[
\{ \sqrt{2} \sin \left( \left( n + \frac{1}{2} \right) \pi x \right) : n \in \mathbb{N}_0 \}
\]
is an orthonormal basis for \( L^2 ([0, 1], m) \) with \( \lambda_n = \left( n + \frac{1}{2} \right)^2 \).
5. Repeat this problem in the case that \( k(x, y) = \min (x, y) - xy \). In this case you should find that Eq. (B.12) is replaced by
\[
\lambda f'' = -f \quad \text{with} \quad f(0) = f'(1) = 0
\]
from which one finds;
\[
\left\{ f_n := \sqrt{2} \sin \left( n\pi x \right) : n \in \mathbb{N} \right\}
\]
is an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors of \( K \) with corresponding eigenvalues; \( \lambda_n = (n\pi)^{-2} \).
6. Use the result of the last part to show,
\[
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} = \frac{\pi^2}{6}.
\]
Hint: First show
\[
k(x, y) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n f_n(x) f_n(y) \quad \text{for a.e.} \quad (x, y).
\]
Then argue the above equation holds for every \((x, y) \in [0, 1]^2\) . Finally take \( y = x \) in the above equation and integrate to arrive at the desired result.

Note: for a wide reaching generalization of this exercise the reader should consult Conway \(^{10}\) Section II.6 (p.49-54)].

**Worked Solution to Exercise** (B.2). Let \( I = [0, 1] \) below.

1. Suppose that \( g \in C^2 ([0, 1]) \) with \( g(0) = 0 = g'(1) \), then
\[
Kg''(x) = \int_0^1 x \wedge yg''(y) \, dy = \int_0^x yg''(y) \, dy + x \int_x^1 g''(y) \, dy
\]
\[
= -\int_0^x g'(y) \, dy + yg'(y)|_0^x + x(g'(1) - g'(x))
\]
\[
= -g(x) + g(0) = -g(x).
\]
Thus if \( g \in C^\infty_c ((0, 1)) \) we have
\[
\langle Kf|g'' \rangle = \langle f|Kg'' \rangle = -\langle f|g \rangle.
\]
In particular if \( Kf = 0 \), this implies that \( \int f(x) \bar{g}(x) \, dx = 0 \) for all \( g \in C^2_c ((0, 1)) \). Since \( C^\infty_c ((0, 1)) \) is dense in \( L^2 ([0, 1], m) \) we may choose \( g_n \in C^2_c ((0, 1)) \) such that \( g_n \to f \) in \( L^2 \) as \( n \to \infty \) and therefore
\[
0 = \lim_{n \to \infty} \int f(x) \bar{g}_n(x) \, dx = \int |f|^2 \, dm.
\]
This shows that \( f = 0 \) a.e.
4. By the spectral Theorem B.15, we must have that

\[ \lambda f(x) = K f(x) = \int x \wedge yf(y) \, dy =: F(x) \]

then \( F \) is continuous and \( F(0) = 0 \). Hence \( \lambda^{-1} F \) is a continuous version of \( f \). We now re-define \( f \) to be \( \lambda^{-1} F \). Since

\[ f(x) = \lambda^{-1} \int x \wedge yf(y) \, dy = \lambda^{-1} \left( \int_0^x yf(y) \, dy + x \int_x^1 f(y) \, dy \right) \]

it follows that \( f \in C^1([0,1]) \) and

\[ f'(x) = \lambda^{-1} \left( x f(x) - f(x) + \int_x^1 f(y) \, dy \right) = \lambda^{-1} \int_x^1 f(y) \, dy. \]

From this it follows that \( f \in C([0,1]) \cap C^2((0,1)) \) and that \( f'' = -\lambda^{-1} f \) and \( f'(1) = 0 \).

3. By writing out all of the solutions to Eq. B.12, we find the only possibilities are

\[ f_n(x) = \sin \left( \left( n + \frac{1}{2} \right) \pi x \right) \quad \text{for } n \in \mathbb{N} \]

with corresponding eigenvalues being \( \lambda_n = \left[ \left( n + \frac{1}{2} \right) \pi \right]^2 \). Notice that if \( f'' = -\lambda^{-1} f \) and \( f \) satisfies the required boundary conditions, then it follows from the computations in part 1. that

\[ -f = K f'' = K \left( -\lambda^{-1} f \right) = -\lambda^{-1} K f \]

and therefore,

\[ K f = \lambda f. \]

4. By the spectral Theorem B.15, we must have that \( \left\{ \frac{f_n}{\|f_n\|_2} : n \in \mathbb{N} \right\} \) is an orthonormal basis for \( L^2 \). Since

\[ \|f_n\|^2 = \int_0^1 \sin^2 \left( \left( n + \frac{1}{2} \right) \pi x \right) \, dx = \int_0^1 \left( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \cos \left( 2(n + 1) \pi x \right) \right) \, dx = \frac{1}{2} \]

we find \( \left\{ \sqrt{2} \sin \left( \left( n + \frac{1}{2} \right) \pi x \right) : n \in \mathbb{N} \right\} \) is an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors for \( H \).

**Shorter solution.** For \( f \in L^2(m) \), let

\[ F(x) := K f(x) = \int x \wedge yf(y) \, dy = \int_0^x yf(y) \, dy + x \int_x^1 f(y) \, dy. \]

Observe that \( F \) is continuous and in fact absolutely continuous, \( F(0) = 0 \) and

\[ F' (x) = xf(x) + \int_x^1 f(y) \, dy - xf(x) = \int_x^1 f(y) \, dy \text{ a.e. } x. \]

If \( F := K f = 0 \) then \( F' = 0 \) a.e. and therefore \( \int_1^x f(y) \, dy = 0 \) for all \( x \). Differentiating this equation shows \( 0 = -f(x) \) a.e. and hence \( f = 0 \) and therefore \( \text{Nul}(K) = 0 \).

If \( F = K f = \lambda f \) for some \( \lambda \neq 0 \) then we learn \( f \) has an absolutely continuous version and from the previous equations we find

\[ f(0) = 0, \ f'(1) = 0, \text{ and } \lambda f'' = F'' = -f. \]

Thus the eigenfunctions of this equation must be of the form \( f(x) = c \sin(kx) \) with \( k \) chosen so that \( 0 = f'(1) = ck \cos(k) \), i.e. \( k = (n + \frac{1}{2}) \pi \).

5. **Modification for Dirichlet Boundary Conditions.** If \( k(x, y) = x \wedge y - xy \) instead, then we have

\[ F(x) = K f(x) = \int_0^x yf(y) \, dy + x \int_x^1 f(y) \, dy - x \int_0^1 yf(y) \, dy, \]

\[ F'(x) = \int_x^1 f(y) \, dy - \int_0^1 yf(y) \, dy, \text{ and} \]

\[ F''(x) = -f(y). \]

Thus again \( \text{Nul}(K) = \{0\} \) and everything goes through as before except that now \( F(0) = 0 \) and \( F(1) = 0 \). Thus the eigenfunctions are of the form \( f(x) = c \sin kx \) with \( k \) chosen so that \( 0 = f(1) = c \sin k \). Thus we must have \( k = n\pi \) now so that \( f_n(x) = c_n \sin n\pi x \). As \( \lambda_n f'' = -f_n \) we learn that \( \lambda_n (n\pi)^2 = -1 \) so that

\[ \lambda_n = \frac{1}{(n\pi)^2} \]

in this case.

6. We know that \( \{f_m \otimes f_n\}_{m,n=1}^{\infty} \) is an orthonormal basis for \( L^2(F^2, m \otimes m) \).

Since

\[ \langle k, f_m \otimes f_n \rangle = \int_{F^2} k(x, y) f_m(x) f_n(y) \, dx \, dy = \langle K f_n, f_m \rangle = \lambda_n \langle f_n, f_m \rangle = \lambda_n \delta_{m,n}, \]

we find

\[ k = \sum_{m,n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n \delta_{m,n} f_m \otimes f_n = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda_n f_n \otimes f_n \text{ m \otimes m - a.e.} \]

As both sides of the previous equation are continuous, we may conclude that
B.4 Hilbert Schmidt Operators

In this section $H$ and $B$ will be Hilbert spaces.

Proposition B.17. Let $H$ and $B$ be a separable Hilbert spaces, $K : H \to B$ be a bounded linear operator, $\{e_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ and $\{u_m\}_{m=1}^{\infty}$ be orthonormal basis for $H$ and $B$ respectively. Then:

1. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \|K e_n\|^2 = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \|K^* u_m\|^2$ allowing for the possibility that the sums are infinite. In particular the Hilbert Schmidt norm of $K$,

\[
\|K\|^2_{HS} := \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \|K e_n\|^2,
\]

is well defined independent of the choice of orthonormal basis $\{e_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$. We say $K : H \to B$ is a Hilbert Schmidt operator if $\|K\|_{HS} < \infty$ and let $HS(H, B)$ denote the space of Hilbert Schmidt operators from $H$ to $B$.

2. For all $K \in L(H, B)$, $\|K\|_{HS} = \|K^*\|_{HS}$ and $\|K\|_{HS} \geq \|K\|_{op} := \sup \{\|K h\| : h \in H \text{ such that } \|h\| = 1\}$.

3. The set $HS(H, B)$ is a subspace of $L(H, B)$ (the bounded operators from $H \to B$). $\|\cdot\|_{HS}$ is a norm on $HS(H, B)$ for which $(HS(H, B), \|\cdot\|_{HS})$ is a Hilbert space, and the corresponding inner product is given by

\[
\langle K_1 | K_2 \rangle_{HS} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \langle K_1 e_n | K_2 e_n \rangle.
\]

4. If $K : H \to B$ is a bounded finite rank operator, then $K$ is Hilbert Schmidt.

5. Let $P_N x := \sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle x | e_n \rangle e_n$ be orthogonal projection onto span$\{e_n : n \leq N\} \subset H$ and for $K \in HS(H, B)$, let $K_N := KP_N$. Then

\[
\|K - K_N\|_{op}^2 \leq \|K - K_N\|^2_{HS} \to 0 \text{ as } N \to \infty,
\]

which shows that finite rank operators are dense in $(HS(H, B), \|\cdot\|_{HS})$. In particular of $HS(H, B) \subset K(H, B)$ – the space of compact operators from $H \to B$.

6. If $Y$ is another Hilbert space and $A : Y \to H$ and $C : B \to Y$ are bounded operators, then

\[
\|KA\|_{HS} \leq \|K\|_{HS} \|A\|_{op} \text{ and } \|CK\|_{HS} \leq \|K\|_{HS} \|C\|_{op},
\]

in particular $HS(H, H)$ is an ideal in $L(H)$.

Proof. Items 1. and 2. By Parseval’s equality and Fubini’s theorem for sums,

\[
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \|K e_n\|^2 = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \|K^* u_m\|^2 = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} |\langle e_n | K^* u_m \rangle|^2 = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |\langle e_n | K^* u_m \rangle|^2 = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \|K^* u_m\|^2.
\]

This proves $\|K\|_{HS}$ is well defined independent of basis and that $\|K\|_{HS} = \|K^*\|_{HS}$. For $x \in H \setminus \{0\}$, $x/\|x\|$ may be taken to be the first element in an orthonormal basis for $H$ and hence

\[
\|K x\|_{HS} \leq \|K\|_{HS} \|x\|.
\]

Multiplying this inequality by $\|x\|$ shows $\|K x\| \leq \|K\|_{HS} \|x\|$ and hence $\|K\|_{op} \leq \|K\|_{HS}$.

Item 3. For $K_1, K_2 \in L(H, B)$,

\[
\|K_1 + K_2\|_{HS} = \left(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \|K_1 e_n + K_2 e_n\|^2\right)^{1/2} \leq \left(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (\|K_1 e_n\|^2 + \|K_2 e_n\|^2)\right)^{1/2} = \|K_1\|_{HS} + \|K_2\|_{HS}.
\]

Item 4. If $K : H \to B$ is a bounded finite rank operator, then $K$ is Hilbert Schmidt.

Item 5. Let $P_N x := \sum_{n=1}^{N} \langle x | e_n \rangle e_n$ be orthogonal projection onto span$\{e_n : n \leq N\} \subset H$ and for $K \in HS(H, B)$, let $K_N := KP_N$. Then

\[
\|K - K_N\|_{op}^2 \leq \|K - K_N\|^2_{HS} \to 0 \text{ as } N \to \infty,
\]

which shows that finite rank operators are dense in $(HS(H, B), \|\cdot\|_{HS})$. In particular of $HS(H, B) \subset K(H, B)$ – the space of compact operators from $H \to B$.

Item 6. If $Y$ is another Hilbert space and $A : Y \to H$ and $C : B \to Y$ are bounded operators, then

\[
\|KA\|_{HS} \leq \|K\|_{HS} \|A\|_{op} \text{ and } \|CK\|_{HS} \leq \|K\|_{HS} \|C\|_{op},
\]

in particular $HS(H, H)$ is an ideal in $L(H)$.
From this triangle inequality and the homogeneity properties of \( \| \cdot \|_{HS} \), we now easily see that \( HS(H, B) \) is a subspace of \( L(H, B) \) and \( \| \cdot \|_{HS} \) is a norm on \( HS(H, B) \). Since

\[
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |(K_1 e_n | K_2 e_n) | \leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \| K_1 e_n \| \| K_2 e_n \| \leq \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \| K_1 e_n \|^2} \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \| K_2 e_n \|^2} = \| K_1 \|_{HS} \| K_2 \|_{HS},
\]

the sum in Eq. (B.13) is well defined and is easily checked to define an inner product on \( HS(H, B) \) such that \( \| K \|^2_{HS} = \langle K | K \rangle_{HS} \).

The proof that \( (HS(H, B), \| \cdot \|_{HS}) \) is complete is very similar to the proof of Theorem 2. Indeed, suppose \( \{ K_m \}_{m=1}^{\infty} \) is a \( \| \cdot \|_{HS} \) - Cauchy sequence in \( HS(H, B) \). Because \( L(H, B) \) is complete, there exists \( K \in L(H, B) \) such that \( \| K - K_m \|_{op} \to 0 \) as \( m \to \infty \). Thus, making use of Fatou’s Lemma 3,

\[
\| K - K_m \|^2_{HS} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \| (K - K_m) e_n \|^2 = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \liminf_{l \to \infty} \| (K_l - K_m) e_n \|^2 \leq \liminf_{l \to \infty} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \| (K_l - K_m) e_n \|^2 = \liminf_{l \to \infty} \| K_l - K_m \|^2_{HS} \to 0 \quad \text{as} \quad m \to \infty.
\]

Hence \( K \in HS(H, B) \) and \( \lim_{m \to \infty} \| K - K_m \|^2_{HS} = 0 \).

**Item 4.** Since \( \text{Null}(K) = \text{Rad}(K) \),

\[
\| K \|^2_{HS} = \| K^* \|^2_{HS} = \sum_{n=1}^{N} \| K^* v_n \|^2_H < \infty
\]

where \( N \) is the dimension of \( K \) and \( \{ v_n \}_{n=1}^{N} \) is an orthonormal basis for \( \text{Rad}(K) = K (H) \).

**Item 5.** Simply observe,

\[
\| K - K_N \|_{op} \leq \| K - K_N \|^2_{HS} = \sum_{n>N} ||K e_n||^2 \to 0 \quad \text{as} \quad N \to \infty.
\]

**Item 6.** For \( C \in L(B, Y) \) and \( K \in L(H, B) \) then

\[
\| C K \|^2_{HS} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \| C K e_n \|^2 \leq \| C \|^2_{op} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \| K e_n \|^2 = \| C \|^2_{op} \| K \|^2_{HS}
\]

and for \( A \in L(Y, H) \),

\[
\| K A \|^2_{HS} = \| A^* K^* \|_{HS} \leq \| A \|^2_{op} \| K^* \|^2_{HS} = \| A \|^2_{op} \| K \|^2_{HS}.
\]

**Remark B.18.** The separability assumptions made in Proposition B.17 are unnecessary. In general, we define

\[
\| K \|^2_{HS} = \sum_{e \in \beta} \| K e \|^2
\]

where \( \beta \subset H \) is an orthonormal basis. The same proof of Item 1. of Proposition B.17 shows \( \| K \|_{HS} \) is well defined and \( \| K \|^2_{HS} = \| K^* \|_{HS}. \) If \( \| K \|^2_{HS} < \infty \), then there exists a countable subset \( \beta_0 \subset \beta \) such that \( K e = 0 \) if \( e \in \beta \setminus \beta_0 \). Let \( H_0 := \overline{\text{span}(\beta_0)} \) and \( B_0 := K (H_0) \). Then \( K (H) \subset B_0 \), \( K |_{H_0} = 0 \) and hence by applying the results of Proposition B.17 to \( K |_{H_0} \) one easily sees that the separability of \( H \) and \( B \) are unnecessary in Proposition B.17.

**Example B.19.** Let \( (X, \mu) \) be a measure space, \( H = L^2(X, \mu) \) and

\[
k(x, y) := \sum_{i=1}^{n} f_i (x) g_i (y)
\]

where

\[
f_i, g_i \in L^2(X, \mu) \quad \text{for} \quad i = 1, \ldots, n.
\]

Define

\[
(K f) (x) = \int_X k(x, y) f (y) \, d\mu (y),
\]

then \( K : L^2(X, \mu) \to L^2(X, \mu) \) is a finite rank operator and hence Hilbert Schmidt.

**Exercise B.3.** Suppose that \( (X, \mu) \) is a \( \sigma \)-finite measure space such that \( H = L^2(X, \mu) \) is separable and \( k : X \times X \to \mathbb{R} \) is a measurable function, such that

\[
\| k \|^2_{L^2 (X \times X, \mu \otimes \mu)} := \int_{X \times X} |k(x, y)|^2 \, d\mu (x) \, d\mu (y) < \infty.
\]

Define, for \( f \in H \),

\[
K f (x) = \int_X k(x, y) f (y) \, d\mu (y),
\]

when the integral makes sense. Show:
1. $Kf(x)$ is defined for $\mu$-a.e. $x$ in $X$.
2. The resulting function $Kf$ is in $H$ and $K: H \rightarrow H$ is linear.
3. $\|K\|_{HS} = \|k\|_{L^2(X \times X, \mu \otimes \mu)} < \infty$. (This implies $K \in HS(H, H)$.)

**Exercise B.4 (Converse to Exercise B.3).** Suppose that $(X, \mu)$ is a $\sigma$–finite measure space such that $H = L^2(X, \mu)$ is separable and $K: H \rightarrow H$ is a Hilbert Schmidt operator. Show there exists $k \in L^2(X \times X, \mu \otimes \mu)$ such that $K$ is the integral operator associated to $k$, i.e.

$$Kf(x) = \int_X k(x, y)f(y) \, d\mu(y). \quad (B.14)$$

In fact you should show

$$k(x, y) := \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( (K^* \varphi_n)(y) \right) \varphi_n(x) \quad (L^2(\mu \otimes \mu) – \text{convergent sum}) \quad (B.15)$$

where $\{\varphi_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ is any orthonormal basis for $H$. 